

C H I N E S E

BASIC COURSE

MODULE 5

LESSONS 25-30

October 1984

VALIDATION EDITION

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

PREFACE

Abbreviations used in the glossary of this module:

A:	Adverb	PW:	Place Word
ADJ:	Adjective	QW:	Question Word
AV:	Auxiliary Verb	RV:	Resultative Verb
BF:	Bound Form	RVE:	Resultative Verb Ending
C/CONJ:	Conjunction	S/SUB:	Subject
CV:	Co-Verb	SP:	Specifier
EV:	Equative Verb	SV:	Stative Verb
IE:	Idiomatic Expression	Tt:	Tàitai
M:	Measure	TW:	Time Word
MA:	Moveable Adverb	Tz:	Tóngzhì
N:	Noun	V:	Verb
NU:	Number	VE:	Verb Ending
O:	Object	VO:	Verb Object
P:	Particle	VP:	Verb Phrase
PN:	Pronoun	Xj:	Xiǎojiě
PH:	Phrase	Xs:	Xiānsheng
PT:	Pattern		

Functional Objectives

At the end of this module you will be able to appropriately use Chinese to:

1. Ask about different types of mail (including insured mail).
2. Ask and answer questions about a sick child.

3. Ask and answer questions about buying different types of plane (train) tickets.
4. Ask and answer questions about having time to do something.
5. Ask and answer questions about importing and exporting.
6. Ask and answer questions about moving or transporting things.
7. Ask and answer questions about overweight mail.
8. Ask and answer questions about postal expenses and postal delivery.
9. Ask and answer questions about putting on and taking off certain items of clothing.
10. Ask and answer questions about the size of a room.
11. Ask and answer questions about whether something is close or far away.
12. Ask for a receipt.
13. Book and/or check into a single or double room.
14. Compare one thing/person with other things/persons.
15. Determine that some things are alike.
16. Discuss how you feel: tired, lazy, comfortable, etc.
17. Discuss weather within vocabulary limits.
18. Discuss whether a room is comfortable or not.
19. Make a phone call to the operator for information.
20. Order a simple meal.
21. Say that something was done by someone.
22. Use a cab.

CONTENTS

Preface	ii
Module Objectives	ii
Lesson 25	
Introduction and Objectives	1
Glossary	2
Communicative Exchanges	5
Duihuà	15
Summary	18
Drills I	20
Drills II	28
Communication Exercises	34
Translation Exercises	35
Lesson 26	
Introduction and Objectives	37
Glossary	38
Communicative Exchanges	41
Duihuà	48
Summary	51
Drills I	53
Drills II	60
Communication Exercises	63
Translation Exercises	64
Lesson 27	
Introduction and Objectives	66
Glossary	67
Communicative Exchanges	71
Duihuà	79
Summary	84
Drills I	86
Drills II	95
Communication Exercises	98
Translation Exercises	99

Lesson 28

Introduction and Objectives	103
Glossary	104
Communicative Exchanges	106
Duìhuà	110
Summary	113
Drills I	114
Drills II	121
Communication Exercises	124
Translation Exercises	126

Lesson 29

Introduction and Objectives	130
Glossary	131
Communicative Exchanges	134
Duìhuà	138
Summary	143
Drills I	144
Drills II	152
Communication Exercises	156
Translation Exercises	157

Lesson 30

Introduction and Objectives	161
Glossary	162
Communicative Exchanges	165
Duìhuà	169
Summary	172
Drills I	173
Drills II	180
Communication Exercises	185
Translation Exercises	186

Module Grammar Summary	190
------------------------------	-----

Module Glossary	209
-----------------------	-----

Workbook

Introduction217

Homework Assignment (Tear-out Sheets)

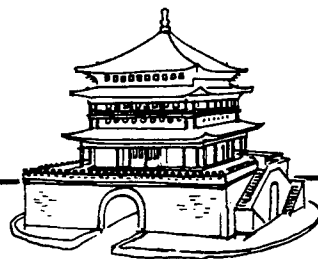
Lesson 25219
Lesson 26223
Lesson 27227
Lesson 28231
Lesson 29235
Lesson 30239

Listening Comprehension Practice (Tear-out Sheets)

Lesson 25243
Lesson 26247
Lesson 27251
Lesson 28255
Lesson 29259
Lesson 30363

LESSON 25

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- Comparison of objects (bǐ).
- Use of the CV cháo, "facing."
- Degrees of comparison: gèng, zuì, de lìhài.
- Yāo, an alternate form of yī.



Zhèige dìfang hěn lěng.

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- a. Discuss weather within vocabulary limits.
- b. Compare one thing/person with other things/persons.
- c. Determine that some things are alike.
- d. Book and/or check into a single or double room.
- e. Discuss whether a room is comfortable or not.

GLOSSARY



- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------|--|
| 1. Bǎoluó Mǎdīng | 保 罗 马 丁 | N: "Paul Martin"
(transliteration) |
| 2. Bǐdé Bèiěr | 彼 得 贝 尔 | N: "Peter Bayer"
(transliteration) |
| 3. bǐ | 比 | CV: compare with, than |
| Zhèzhǐ shǒu bǐ nàzhǐ shǒu dà. | | (This hand is bigger than that hand.) |
| 4. bú dà | 不 大 | A: not very |
| 5. bú xiè | 不 谢 | IE: "Don't mention it."
(lit. You need not thank me.) |
| 6. Cháo | 朝 | CV: facing, towards |
| Tāde fángzi shì zuò běi cháo nán. | | (His house has a southern exposure.) |
| Dào nàlǐ qù nǐ děi cháo dōng zǒu. | | (To go there, you have to go towards the east.) |
| 7. dǎkāi | 打 开 | V: to open up, to turn on |
| 8. dǎsuàn | 打 算 | V: to plan to |
| 9. dàgài | 大 概 | MA: probably |
| 10. dānrénfáng | 单 人 房 | N: room for one person |
| 11. dēngjì | 登 记 | V: to register, to check in |
| 12. diànbào | 电 报 | N: telegraph |
| 13. dǐxià | 底 下 | N: underneath, below |
| 14. dīng | 订 | V: to fix, to set, to book,
to subscribe |
| 15. fázi | 法 子 | N: way, method |
| 16. gèng | 更 | A: still more, even |
| Zhège hǎo, nàge gèng hǎo. | | (This one is good, but that is even better.) |

17. gōngdào 公道 SV: be fair, be just, be reasonable
18. hēi 黑 SV: be black, dark
19. huáng 黄 SV: be yellow
20. hùzhào 护照 N: passport
21. jiézhàng 结帐 VO: to settle an account, to check out (of a hotel)
22. kě 可 A: indeed
 Tā kě shì gè hǎo rén. (He is indeed a good person.)
 他可是个好人。
23. kǒngpà 恐怕 V: be afraid that, probably
 pà 怕 V: to fear
24. kōngqì tiáojiéqì 空气调节器 N: air conditioner
 (kōngtiáo) (空调)
25. lán 蓝 SV: be blue
26. lěng 冷 SV: be cold
27. lěngqì 冷气 N: air conditioning (cold air)
28. lìhài 利害 SV: be fierce, terrible, severe
27. liàng 亮 SV: be light or bright (opposite of dark)
28. lǚguǎn 旅馆 N: hotel
29. mǎn 满 SV/V: to be full, packed/to fill
 wūzǐlǐ zuò mǎn le rén. (The room was packed with people.)
 屋子里坐满了人。
30. nuǎnqì 暖气 N: central heating (warm air)
31. qiánjitiān 前几天 N: a few days ago
32. rè 热 SV: be hot
33. shǒutíxiāng 手提箱 N: suitcase

- | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| 34. shūfu | 舒服 | SV: be comfortable, feel well |
| | Zhèjian wūzi hěn shūfu.
这间屋子很舒服。 | (This room is very comfortable.) |
| | Tā bù shūfu le.
他不舒服了。 | (He is not feeling well.) |
| 35. shuāngrénfáng | 双人房 | N: room for two persons |
| 36. sìtàojiān | 四套间 | N: a four-room suite |
| 37. suóyǒude | 所有的 | N: all |
| 37. tuì | 退 | V: to return, give back |
| 38. wūzi | 屋子 | N: room |
| 39. xiǎofèi | 小费 | N: tip, gratuity |
| 40. xíngli | 行李 | N: baggage (M: <u>jiàn</u>) |
| xínglipiào | 行李票 | N: baggage ticket |
| 41. yāo | 一 | Nu: one (used in place of yī in room numbers, telephone numbers) |
| 42. yèli | 夜里 | MA/N: nighttime, during the night |
| yè | 夜 | N: night |
| 42. yíyàng | 一样 | A/SV: equally, similarly, be the same, alike |

Old words with new meanings/functions

- | | | |
|----------------|---|---|
| 43. suànchulai | 算出来 | RV: to figure out |
| 44. suànshang | 算上 | RV: to include in, count in |
| 45. yǒu | 有 | CV/SV: be as much as, be as |
| | Zhèzhang huàr (méi)you nàzhang huàr nàme hǎokàn.
这张画儿(没)有那张画儿那么好看。 | (This painting is [not] as pretty as that one.) |

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



LESSON 25

Lǚguǎn - Hotel

M: Martin
DC: Desk Clerk
BB: Bellboy

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | M: Wǒ shì Bǎoluó Mǎdīng.
Zhèwèi shì Bīdé Bèiěr Xiānsheng Wǒmen shì cóng Měiguó lái de. Qiánjítian wǒ gěi nimen dǎle yíge diànbào dīng yíge sìtàojiān, nimen shōudào ma? | I'm Paul Martin. This is Peter Bayer. We are from America. Several days ago, I sent you a telegram to reserve a four-room suite; did you receive it? |
| 2 | DC: Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, nǐde diànbào wǒmen shōudào le. Kěshì suǒyǒude sìtàojiān dōu yǒu rén dīng le. | Mr. Martin, we've received your telegram, but all the four-room suites are full. |
| 3 | M: Dōu mǎn le? Nǐ néng bùnéng gěi wǒmen xiǎngge fázi? | All full? Can you think of a way for us? |
| 4 | DC: Kǒngpà méi fázi. Wǒmen yǒu shuāngrénfáng. Nimen yào buyào? | I'm afraid that there is no way. We have a room with a double bed. Do you want it? |
| 5 | M: Shuāngrénfáng butài hǎo. Nimen yǒu dānrénfáng méiyǒu? Dānrénfáng bǐ shuāngrénfáng hǎo duō le. | A double bed is not very good. Do you have a room with a single bed? A room with a single bed is much better than a double bed. |

Notes:

1. Qiánjítian. As it is used in this lesson, Qián means "previous/previously" and jítian means "a few days" or "several days." Hence, qiánjítian means "a few days ago."

Sìtàojiān. Sì is the number four (4). A tàojiān means "a room opening off another, or inner, room." A sìtàojiān, therefore, refers to a four-room suite.

2. Suóyǒude. You already know how to use the adverb dōu, "all/both." (If you have any doubt, see the notes in lesson 6.) Since dōu is an adverb, it must be placed after the subject and before the verbs in the sentence, whereas the noun suóyǒude, "all" can be placed before the subject of a sentence. Compare the placement of the adverb and the noun in the following sentence:

Shìqing wǒ dōu zhīdào.

I know what's going on.

Suóyǒude shìqing wǒ dōu
zhīdào.

I know everything that's going
on.

Note that the adverb dōu may appear with the noun suóyǒude in the same sentence.

3. Dōu mǎnle means "all filled" or "packed." As it's used in this lesson, mǎn means "full, filled," and "packed."

Zhèliǎngge chōuti dōu mǎnle. Both drawers are full.

Wūzili zuò mǎnle rén.

The room was packed with
people.

4. Kǒngpà means "to be afraid that (something is/is not the case)." It sometimes means "probably," as in Zhèliàng qìchē kǒngpà shì tāde, "This car is probably his."

Shuāngrénfáng means "a room for two," or "a pair." Shuāng, as it is used in this lesson, means "two, twin, both, dual," and "pair."

5. Búdà means "not too." It literally means "not big" and is interchangeable with bútài.

Dānrénfáng means "a room for one," or "a single." Dān, as it is used in this lesson, also means "alone."

Dānrénfáng bǐ shuāngrénfáng hǎoduōle, "A room for one is much better than a room for two": The pattern...bǐ...SV¹ is used to make comparisons.

1. SV/(Stative Verbs) include the following types:

- (1) adjectival verbs (hǎo)
- (2) auxiliary verbs (huī)
- (3) verbs describing attitudes/situations (zhīdao; xīhuan, etc.)

(1) X bǐ Y SV.

Zhège bǐ nàge hǎo.

(2) X NEG bǐ Y SV.

Zhège bù bǐ nàge hǎo.

(not) *Zhège bǐ nàge bù hǎo.

To indicate how much more, add -duō le/-de duō, "a lot," to an adjectival verb.

Zhège bǐ nàge hǎoduole. This is much better than that.

Zhège bǐ nàge hǎokànde duō. This is much better looking than that.

Although the verb phrase (VP) begins with a stative verb (SV), that may not be the only word in the comparison. The VP may be expanded to include other verbs (any type) and objects.

The things being compared may also be expanded. Entire sentences may be placed in the slots for things compared:

Zuò qìchē bǐ zǒulù kuàide duō. Going by car is much faster than walking.

Nǐ xué Zhōngwén bǐ wǒ xué Yīngwén róngyi. It's easier for you to study Chinese than it is for me to study English.

Tā bǐ wǒ néng chī. He can eat more than I can.

Frame 2

6 DC: Wǒmen yǒu dānrénfáng.
Wǒ kéyi gěi nǐmen liǎngjiān,
wūyāoqī gēn wūyāojiǔ hào.
Dōu shì cháo dōng de, hěn
liàng.

We have rooms with single beds. I can give you two, Numbers 517 and 519. Both are facing the east and are very bright.

7 M: Nà kě hǎo. Wuzi tài
hēi wǒ jiǔ juéde bù shūfu.
Nà liǎngjiān wūzi yiyàng
dà ma?

That's indeed good. I feel uncomfortable if the room is too dark. Are those two rooms the same size?

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 8 | DC: Bù yíyàng dà. Wǔyāojiǔ měiyóu wǔyāoqǐ nàme dà, bǐ wǔyāoqǐ xiǎo yìdiǎnr. | They're not the same. 519 is not as big as 517; it's a little smaller than 517. |
| 9 | M: Duōshao qián yìjiān? | How much for one room? |
| 10 | DC: Wǔyāoqǐ yìbǎisānshikuài qián yìtiān, wǔyāojiǔ yìbǎishiwǔkuài yìtiān. | 517 is \$130 per day. 519 is \$115 per day. |
| 11 | M: Zěnmē nàme guì a? | How come they are so expensive? |
| 12 | DC: Wǒmen zhèr shèbèi hǎo, fúwù hǎo. Yìbǎisānshikuài búsuàn guì. Nǐ yào zhǎo bǐ wǒmen gèng gōngdao de lǚguǎn, hái bú tài róngyi ne. Wǒmen zhèr shì zuì gōngdao de le. | Our facilities and services are good; \$130 is not considered expensive. It's not easy to find a hotel fairer than ours. Our hotel is the most reasonable. |

Notes:

6. Cháo: The co-verb cháo, literally meaning "facing towards" or "in the direction of," is commonly used in Beijing. Some examples of its usage:

Qǐng nǐ cháo nán zǒu.

Please go southward.

Zhège mén cháo lǐ kāi
háishi cháo wài kāi?

Does this door open inwards
or outwards?

Wǒ bù xǐhuan zuò dōng cháo
xī de fángzi.

I don't like a house that's
facing west/with a western
exposure.

Cháo zhe mǐnzhǔ zhǔyì
qiángjìn.

Advance towards the goal of
democracy.

7. (Gēn...)yíyàng: Yíyàng is a stative verb meaning "to be the same." When a sentence tells you in what respect the compared items are alike, yíyàng acts as an adverb and may be translated as "equally." It's one of the most commonly used patterns for comparing things.

(1) X gēn Y yíyàng.

Zhèliàng qìchē gēn nà-
liàng (qìchē) yíyàng.

These two cars are alike.

(2) X gēn Y yíyàng SV.

Zhèliàng qìchē gēn nà-
liàng (qìchē) yíyàng
guì.

These two cars are equally
expensive.

(3) Tāmen liǎngge rén dōu
yíyàng yǒuqián.

The two of them are equally
wealthy.

8. 509 méiyòu 517 nàme dà, "509 is not as large/big as 517."
The pattern...méiyòu...nàme SV/VP is used to make a comparison
when one thing is LESS than another.

(1) X méiyòu Y nàme/zhème SV.

Wǒde qìchē máiyòu tāde
nàme dà.

My car is not as big as his.

(2) X méiyòu Y nàme/zhème VP.

Tā méiyòu wǒ zhème xī-
huan kàn diànshì.

He doesn't like to watch TV as
much as I do.

Like the bǐ pattern described in Note No.5, the things being
compared may also be expanded. Entire sentences may be placed in
the slots for things compared:

Zuò fēijī méiyòu zuò chuán
nàme shūfu

Going by plane is not as com-
fortable as going by boat/
ship.

Yāo. An alternate reading for the number "one," is fre-
quently used in room numbers and telephone numbers.

12. Gèng, "more," "even more," "still more": When indicating
degrees of comparison, the adverbs gèng and zuì (Lesson 17) are
used.

Mìxībī Hé (2470 m) hěn
cháng.

The Mississippi River is
very long.

Mìsūlī Hé (2700 m) gèng
cháng.

The Missouri River is even
longer.

Níluó Hé (4037 m) zuì cháng
bǐ nà liǎngtiáo dōu cháng.

The Nile is the longest, longer
than the other two.

Frame 3

- | | | |
|----|--|--|
| 13 | M: Hǎo ba! Wǒmen jiù yào nà liǎngjiān ba. Wūzili yǒu měiyou kōngtiáo de shèbèi? | OK. We'll take those two rooms. Is there any air conditioner in the room? |
| 14 | DC: Yǒu. Qǐng nǐmen liǎng-wei xiān dēngjì. Máfan nǐmen bǎ hùzhào ná chūlai gěi wǒ kànkàn. (after checking the passports and copying down the necessary information) Nǐmen dǎsuàn zhù jǐtiān? | Yes, there is. Would you two register please. May I see your passports? How many days do you plan to stay? |
| 15 | M: Dàgài sì-wǔtiān. Nǐmen kèren jiézhàng tuì fángjiān de shíjiān shì jǐdiǎnzhōng? | About four-five days. When is the check-out time? |
| 16 | DC: Zhōngwǔ shíèrdiǎn yī-qián. Guò le shíèrdiǎn jiù yào duō suàn yītiān de qián le. Wǒ jiào fùwùyuán bǎ nǐmende xíngli nádao fángjiān qù. | Before 12 o'clock noon. After 12 o'clock noon we'll charge for one more day. Let me call a bellboy to carry your baggage to your room. |
| 17 | M: Hǎo. Xièxie. | OK. Thanks. |
| 18 | DC: Búxiè. | Don't mention it. |

Note:

13. Kōngtiáo is an abbreviation of "kōngqì-tiáojiéqì," "air conditioner."

14. Máfan nǐmen bǎ hùzhào ná chūlai gěi wǒ kànkàn illustrates some of the rules concerning the use of the object marker bǎ. (Read Notes No.10 and 16, Lesson 22 on bǎ.)

Bǎ is an object marker used to bring the direct object of a sentence to a position preceding the main verb; doing so affects the meaning of a sentence. There are reasons why bǎ must be used, why it may not be used, and why it is optional in different kinds of sentences.

a. What conditions are necessary for using bǎ?

(1) The object of bǎ must be acted on or be disposed of.

In other words, the action must be performed on the direct object of bǎ. In the third sentence of exchange 14, hùzhào undergoes the action náchūlai. Other examples are:

Tā bǎ tāde qìchē mài le.

He sold his car.
(Car undergoes the action of being sold.)

Wǒ bǎ nàpíng píjiǔ hē le.

I drank that bottle of beer.
(Beer undergoes the action of having been drunk.)

(2) The verb must be an action verb (such as ná in exchange 13). Bǎ is not used with stative and process verbs. For example, you may not use bǎ with yǒu, zhīdao, xǐhuan, ài, xiǎng, huì, dǒng, etc.

(3) The object of bǎ must refer to something specific or definite (such as nímende hùzhào in exchange 14 and nímende xíngli in exchange 16). Often the object of bǎ must be translated into English with the definite article "the":

Wǒ bǎ liǎngzhang huǒche piào
gěi ta le.

I gave him the two train
tickets (not any two train
tickets).

(4) The verb phrase must be complex. Here are examples of the ways in which a verb phrase can be made complex so that bǎ may be used:

(ASPECT MARKER)

Tā bǎ tāde qìchē mài le.

He sold his car.

(REDUPLICATED VERB)

Qǐng nǐ bǎ huǒchē piào
huànhuan.

Please exchange the train
tickets.

(COMPOUND VERB)

Tā bǎ wǒde dìzhǐ xiěxia-
lai le

He wrote down my address.

Nǐ bǎ xíngli náshang chē
qu ba.

Take the baggage into the
car.

Wǒmen zuótiān yǐjīng bǎ
zhèijiàn shì shuohǎo le.

We agreed on this matter
yesterday.

Wǒ xiān bǎ zhèige xiěwán
zài zǒu.

I will finish writing this
first and then leave.

Nǐ bǎ wǒde míngzi xiěcuò
le.

You wrote my name wrong.

(MANNER EXPRESSION AFTER THE VERB)

Nǐ bǎ zhèige zì xiěde tài
dà le

You wrote this character too
large.

Tā bǎ zhèijiàn shì shuōde
hěn qīngchū.

He talked very clearly about
this.

(PREPOSITIONAL VERB PHRASE AFTER THE VERB)

Bǎ píjiǔ fàng zài zhuōzi-
shàng.

Put the beer on the table.

Wǒ bǎ chē tíng zài nèibian
děng nín.

I will park the car over there
and wait for you.

(INDIRECT OBJECT AFTER THE VERB)

Lǐ Xiānsheng bǎ zìdiǎn
gěi xuésheng le.

Mr. Lǐ has given the dic-
tionaries to the students.

(NUMBER PLUS MEASURE AFTER THE VERB)

Qǐng nǐ zài bǎ tāde diàn-
huà hàomǎr niàn yíci.

Please read his telephone
number aloud once more.

Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèige kàn
yíxià.

Please take a look at this.
OR
Please read this over.

b. When must bǎ be used?

The examples above which require the use of bǎ are those with a prepositional verb phrase after the verb, those with a manner expression after the verb, and most of the sentences under the heading "Compound Verb." In these examples, the object may not be placed between the verb and the element which follows.

c. When can't bǎ be used?

Bǎ cannot normally be used in a sentence if the verb is stative and not an action and process verb or an action verb, if the verb describes perception (like kànjian and tīngjian), if the object does not undergo action, if the object is indefinite, or if the verb is a simple verb. Here are some examples of sentences in which bǎ cannot be used:

Wǒ mǎile yige shōuyīnjī.

I bought a radio.
(indefinite object)

Wǒ kànjian tā le.

I saw him.
(perception verb kànjian;
object does not undergo
action.)

Wǒ xiǎng kàn zhèiběn shū.

I would like to read this book. (simple verb)

Wǒ yǒu hěn duō Měiguó péngyou.

I have a lot of American friends.
(yǒu is not an action verb)

Wǒ zhīdao zhèijiàn shì.

I know of this matter.
(zhīdao is not an action verb)

d. What is the motivation for using bǎ?

Bǎ is used when the verb phrase gives more new important information than the object does. The Chinese prefer to place that important verb phrase in the final position in a sentence, where the phrase will be prominent. Bǎ moves the object out of the way (to the beginning of a sentence), allowing the verb phrase to have its full impact.

e. To make a bǎ sentence negative, place the negative adverb in front of bǎ, not in front of the main verb.

Tā méi bǎ zhuōzi bānchūqu.

He did not move the table out.

Nǐ bù bǎ xíngli fàng zài wūzili zěnme xíng?

How can it do for you not to put the baggage in the room?
(How can you not put the baggage in the room?)

Frame 4

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 19 | M: Qǐng nǐ bǎ nàge lánde shǒutíxiāng fàng zài zhèli; huángde fàng zài nàzhāng zhuōzi dīxià. | Please put that blue suitcase here and the yellow one under that desk. |
| 20 | BB: Shì. Jīntiān rè de lǐhai. Nǐ yào buyao wǒ dǎkāi lěngqì? | Yes. It's very hot today. Would you like me to turn on the air conditioner for you? |
| 21 | M: Hǎo. Xiànzài kuài shíyuè le, zěnme hái zhème rè? | Yes. It's almost October; why it still so hot? |
| 22 | BB: Jiùshi báitiān rè. Yèli hái yǒu yīdiǎnr lěng ne. Yǒude rén děi kāi nuǎnqì. | It's hot during the day. At night it's a little bit cold. Some people have to turn on heaters. |

- | | | |
|----|--|--|
| 23 | M: (handing tip to BB)
Zhè shì gěi nǐ de. | This is for you. |
| 24 | BB: Xièxie xiānsheng. Wǒmen
bùshòu xiǎofèi. | Thank you, Sir. We don't
accept tips. |

Note:

19. Lánde: Stative verbs of color (yánsè) behave somewhat differently than other stative verbs, such as guī and dà. To say in Chinese that something is a certain color, such as blue in exchange 19, you say that it is "a blue one."

Zhège shòutíxiāng shì lánde. This suitcase is blue.

Nàge shòutíxiāng shì huángde. That suitcase is yellow.

20. Jīntiān rède lǐhai, "Today is terribly hot." To describe a particular state, the particle -de is added to the stative verb describing the condition, and that stative verb is followed by an adjectival verb which expresses the degree of the condition. Other examples are:

Qùnián nàli lěngde lǐhai. Last year it was terribly cold there.

Wǒde yá téngde lǐhai. I have a terrible toothache.

对话

M: Martin
DC: Desk Clerk
BB: Bellboy

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | M: 我是保罗·马丁。这位是彼得·贝尔先生。我们是从美国来的。前几天我给你们打了一个电报订一个四套间；你们收到了吗？ | I'm Paul Martin. This is Peter Bayer. We are from America. Several days ago, I sent you a telegram to reserve a four-room suite; did you receive it? |
| 2 | DC: 马丁先生，你的电报我们收到了，可是所有的四套间都有人订了。 | Mr. Martin, we've received your telegram, but all the four-room suites are full. |
| 3 | M: 都满了？你能不能给我们想个法子？ | All full? Can you think of a way for us? |
| 4 | DC: 恐怕没有法子。我们有双人房。你们要不要？ | I'm afraid that there is no way. We have a room with a double bed. Do you want it? |
| 5 | M: 双人房不大好。你们有单人房没有？单人房比双人房好多了。 | A double bed is not very good. Do you have a room with a single bed? A room with a single bed is much better than a double bed. |

Frame 2

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| 6 | DC: 我们有单人房。我可以给你们两间，517跟519号。都是朝东的，很亮。 | We have rooms with single beds. I can give you two, Numbers 517 and 519. Both are facing the east and are very bright. |
|---|--|--|

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 7 | M: 那可好。屋子太黑我就觉得不舒服。那两间屋子一样大吗? | That's indeed good. I feel uncomfortable if the room is too dark. Are those two rooms the same size? |
| 8 | DC: 不一样大。519 没有 517 那么大; 比 517 小一点儿。 | They're not the same. 519 is not as big as 517; it's a little smaller than 517. |
| 9 | M: 多少钱一天? | How much for one room? |
| 10 | DC: 517 一百三十块一天, 518 一百十五块一天。 | 517 is \$130 per day. 519 is \$115 per day. |
| 11 | M: 怎么那么贵? | How come they are so expensive? |
| 12 | DC: 我们这儿设备好、服务好。一百三十块不算贵。你要找比我们更公道的旅馆, 还不太容易呢。我们这儿是最公道的了。 | Our facilities and services are good; \$130 is not considered expensive. It's not easy to find a hotel fairer than ours. Our hotel is the most reasonable. |

Frame 3

- | | | |
|----|---------------------------------------|--|
| 13 | M: 好吧! 我们就要那两间吧。屋子里有没有空调的设备? | OK. We'll take those two rooms. Is there any air conditioner in the room? |
| 14 | DC: 有。请你们两位先登记。麻烦你们把护照拿出来给我看。你们打算住几天? | Yes, there is. Would you two register please. May I see your passports? How many days do you plan to stay? |

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 15 | M: 大概四, 五天。你们客人
结帐退房的时间是几点
钟? | About four-five days. When
is the check-out time? |
| 16 | DC: 中午十二点以前。过了十
二点就要多算一天的钱了。
我叫服务员把你们的行李
拿到房间去。 | Before twelve o'clock.
After 12 noon we'll charge
for one more day. Let me
call a bellboy to carry your
baggage to your room. |
| 17 | M: 好。多谢。 | OK. Thanks. |
| 18 | DC: 不谢。 | Don't mention it. |

Frame 4

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 19 | M: 请你把那个蓝的手提箱放
在这里; 黄的放在那张桌
子底下。 | Please put that blue suitcase
here and the yellow one under
that desk. |
| 20 | BB: 是。今天热得利害。你要
不要我打开冷气? | Yes. It's very hot today.
Would you like me to turn on
the air conditioner for you? |
| 21 | M: 好。现在快十月了; 怎么
还这么热? | Yes. It's almost October;
why it still so hot? |
| 22 | BB: 就是白天热。夜里还有一
点儿冷呢。有的人得开暖
气。 | It's hot during the day. At
night it's a little bit cold.
Some people have to turn on
heaters. |
| 23 | M: 这是给你的。 | This is for you. |
| 24 | BB: 谢谢先生。我们不收小费。 | Thank you, Sir. We don't
accept tips. |

SUMMARY



Frame 1

Comparison, with the co-verb bǐ

Simple: X (neg)bǐ Y SV.

Zhèběn shū bǐ nàiběn
hǎo.

This book is better
than that(one).

Zhèiwèi nǚshì bùbǐ nàwèi
nǚshì jiànkāng.

This young lady is no
healthier than that
young lady.

Complex: Add duōle or -de duō to increase quality or quantity of comparison.

X (neg)bǐ Y SVde duō/duōle.

Zhèige xuésheng xiědezi
bǐ wǒ xiěde hǎode duō.

This student writes charac-
ters much better than I.

Zuò chuán bǐ zuò fēiji
piányi duōle.

It is much cheaper to ride
on a boat than on a
plane.

Frame 2

a. The co-verb cháo, "facing towards," is used in sentences to indicate the direction someone is facing.

Qǐng cháo běi zǒu.

Please go toward the north.

Tāde yǐzi cháo chuānghu
fàngzhe ne.

His chair is (placed)
facing the window.

b. Usages of (gēn...) yiyàng

-as a SV: X gēn Y yiyàng.

Zhèibǎ yǐzi gēn nàibǎ yǐzi
yiyàng.

This chair is like that
chair.

-as an adverb: X gēn Y yiyàng SV/VP

Zhèibǎ yǐzi gēn nàibǎ yiyàng
piányi.

These two chairs are
equally inexpensive.

Zhèiliǎngge xuésheng dōu yiyàng
huì shuō Zhōngguo huà.

These two students can
speak Chinese equally
well.

c. Comparison using X méiyou Y nàme SV/VP:

X is not as SV as Y.

Wǒde qìchē méiyou tāde nàme
guì.My car is not as expensive as
his.Zhèige xuésheng méiyou
nàge zhèime xīhuan chá
cǐdiǎn.This student doesn't like to
consult a dictionary as
much as that one.d. Gèng and zui. These two adverbs are used to indicate
degrees of comparison.gèng:

Xiànzài tā gèng hǎole.

Now he is even better.

Jīntiān gèn rè yìdiǎnr.

Today it is a bit hotter.

zui:Tāmen sānwèi xiānsheng,
Sūn Xiānsheng zui hǎo.Of the three teachers, Mr.
Sun is the best.Frame 3Review of bǎ pattern:-It is used to transpose the object acted upon to a position
in front of the verb.-The verb itself must have a complement, such as le, a verb
suffix (V xiàlai, V bǎole, V sī).-The verb must be an action verb so that the transposed
object undergoes some action or change. Example:Bǎ zhèizhi bǐ náhuí xuéxiào
qù.Take this pen back to the
school.Wǒmen bǎ shēngzì dōu liànxi-
le.We have studied all of the
new words.

Qǐng bǎ mén kāikāi.

Please open the door.

Frame 4SV de lihai. This type of phrase is used to describe an
extreme situation or degree.

Qùnián zhèli rède lihai.

Last year it was extremely
hot here.

DRILLS I



A. Substitute the cued words for the underlined word.

(T) Zhèshuāng xié bǐ nàshuāng
xīn.
cue: dà

(This pair of shoes is
newer than that pair.)

(S) Zhèshuāng xié bǐ nàshuāng
dà.

(This pair of shoes is
larger than that pair.)

Note

In this kind of comparison, "newer" is used in English, but a simple xīn is used in Chinese without the comparative degree marker gèng (more). Gèng is used in structures shown in Drill H.

Zhège shǒutíxiāng bǐ nàge dà.

- cue:
1. small
 2. expensive
 3. reasonable (inexpensive)
 4. old (worn)
 5. new
 6. pretty
 7. ugly
 8. useful
 9. useless

B. Substitute drill as A.

Zhèjian shuāngrénfáng bǐ nàjian dānrénfáng piányi.

- cue:
1. expensive
 2. bright
 3. dark
 4. large
 5. small
 6. new
 7. old
 8. pretty
 9. comfortable

C. Reorganize each sentence into one using méiyou, but do not change the information. (The adverb nàme is optional, but it is generally used.)

(T) Guǎngzhōu bǐ Běijīng rè.	(S) Běijīng <u>méiyou</u> Guǎngzhōu <u>nàme</u> rè.
	OR
	Běijīng <u>méiyou</u> Guǎngzhōu rè.

1. Běijīng bǐ Guǎngzhōu lěng.
2. Zhège lán shǒutíxiāng bǐ nàge hēi shǒutíxiāng dà.
3. Xiǎo Zhàode xíngli bǐ Lǎo Chénde (xíngli) dūo.
4. Yèli bǐ báitiān lěng.
5. Báitiān bǐ yèli rè.
6. Zhège fàngjiān bǐ nàge (fàngjiān) liàng.
7. Nàge shuāngrénfáng bǐ zhège dānrénfáng hēi.
8. Zhège fázi bǐ nàge fázi róngyi.
9. Dǎ diànbào bǐ xiěxìn kuài.
10. Dǎ diànhuà bǐ xiěxìn guì.

D. Reorganize each sentence into one using bǐ, but do not change the information.

(T) Nǐ fùqin méiyou tā fùqin yǒuqián.	(S) Tā fùqin <u>bǐ</u> nǐ fùqin yǒuqián.
---------------------------------------	--

1. Wǒmen jiàoshī méiyou nǐmen jiàoshī (nàme) liàng.
2. Bǎoluó de hùzhào méiyou Bǐdé de (nàme) xīn.
3. Zhèjiā lǚguǎn méiyou nàjiā lǚguǎn (nàme) piányi.
4. Zhège hēi shǒutíxiāng méiyou nàge bái shǒutíxiāng (nàme) hǎokàn.

5. Píngxīn méiyǒu hángkōngxīn (nàme) kuài.
6. Tā chángde gēr méiyǒu nǐ chángde gēr (nàme) hǎotīng.
7. Wǒ xiěde zì méiyǒu nǐ xiěde zì (nàme) hǎokàn.
8. Zhèzhǒng bìng méiyǒu nàzhǒng bìng (nàme) lihai.
9. Dēngjì méiyǒu jiézhàng (nàme) máfan.
10. Jiùjīnshān méiyǒu Niūyuē (nàme) lěng.

E. Expansion

Expand each sentence by adding the phrase given in parentheses (which qualifies the difference in the comparison).

(T) Xiǎo Huá bǐ Xiǎo Míng dà.
(two years)
(Xiao Hua is older than
Xiao Ming.)

(S) Xiǎo Huá bǐ Xiǎo Míng dà
liǎngsuì.
(Xiao Hua is two years
older than Xiao Ming.)

(T) Niūyuē bǐ Jiùjīnshān lěng.
(much more)
(New York is colder than
San Francisco.)

(S) Niūyuē bǐ Jiùjīnshān lěng
de duō.
(New York is much colder
than San Francisco.)

1. Tāde xínglǐ bǐ nǐde (xínglǐ) duō.
(two pieces)
2. Guǎngzhōu bǐ Běijīng rè.
(much more)
3. Shuāngrénfáng bǐ dānrénfáng guī.
(\$15)
4. Zhège fázi bǐ nàge fázi róngyi.
(a little bit)
5. Zhècì kǎoshì bǐ shàngcì kǎoshì nán.
(much more)
6. Wǒ zhèshuāngxié bǐ tā nàshuāng xié piányi.
(\$5)

7. Báitian bǐ yèli lěng.
(much more)
8. Tā láide bǐ nǐ (láide) zǎo.
(half an hour)
9. Tā láide bǐ wǒ (láide) wǎn.
(one hour)
10. Dǎ diànhuà bǐ dǎ diànbào kuài.
(a little)

F. Expansion

Expand each sentence by adding the word(s) given in parentheses (which tells what quality or manner is compared).

(T) Běijīng gēn Niūyuē yíyàng. (cold) (Beijing and New York are same.)	(S) Běijīng gēn Niūyuē yíyàng <u>lěng</u> . (Beijing is as cold as New York.)
(T) Tā shuōhuà gēn nǐ shuōhuà yíyàng. (fast) (He speaks like you.)	(S) Tā shuōhuà gēn nǐ shuōhuà yíyàng <u>kuài</u> . (He speaks as fast as you do.)

1. Zhègè gēn nàgè gēn yíyàng.
(good to listen)
2. Nǐ xiǐde zì gēn wǒ xiǐde zì yíyàng.
(ugly)
3. Zhèjiā lǚguǎn gēn nàjiā lǚguǎn yíyàng.
(expensive)
4. Zhègè fángjiān gēn nàgè fángjiān yíyàng.
(bright)
5. Wǒmen jiàoshì gēn nǐmen jiàoshì yíyàng.
(dark)

6. Zhèzhǒng bìng gēn nàzhǒng bìng yíyàng.
(severe)
7. Hángkōngxīn gēn píngxīn yíyàng.
(slow)
8. Zài nàge dìfang yèli gēn báitiān yíyàng.
(hot)
9. Zài wǒman lǎojiā báitiān gēn yèlǐ yíyàng.
(cold)
10. Nǐde shǒutíxiāng gen wǒde shǒutíxiāng yíyàng.
(large)

G. Question-answer

Give a complete answer to each question according to the cue.
Make your sentence a comparison by using bǐ or méiyou.

(T) Běijīng rè ne, háishi
Guǎngzhōu rè? (Guǎngzhōu)

(Which place is hotter,
Beijing or Guangzhou?)

(S) Guǎngzhou bǐ Beijing rè.
OR

Běijīng méiyou Guǎngzhōu
nàme rè.

(Guangzhou is hotter than
Beijing.)

OR

(Beijing is not as hot
as Guangzhou.)

1. Shì nǐde shǒutíxiāng dà ne, háishi tāde dà? (his)
2. Shì Bǐdé de xíngli duō ne, háishi Bǎoluó de duō? (Peter)
3. Dǎ diànhuà bǐ dǎ diànbào kuài ma? (no)
4. Shuāngrénfáng bǐ dānrénfáng guì ma? (no)
5. Nǐde xínglipiào gēn tāde xínglipiào yíyàng ma? (no)
6. Dānrénfáng bǐ shuāngrénfáng shūfu ma? (no)
7. Nàliǎngge shǒutíxiāng, shì hēide guì ne, háishi báide guì?
(the white one)

8. Nàge fángjiān bǐ zhège fángjiān liàng ma? (no)
 9. Xiě Zhōngwén bǐ xiě Yīngwén nán ma? (no)
 10. Xué chànggē bǐ xué xiězì róngyì ma? (yes)

H. Correction

Most of the following sentences are incorrect. Make the necessary correction or addition wherever you see fit, and leave the correct one as is.

(T) Zhèshuāng hēi xié guì;
 nàshuāng bái xié gèng guì.

(S) (Leave it as it is. This sentence is correct, as it is comparing two things, both expensive; thus one is more expensive.)

(T) Zhèshuāng hēi xié piáng-yì;
 nàshuāng bái xié gèng guì.

(The word gèng has to be deleted.)
 (S) Zhèshuāng hēi xié piáng-yì;
 nàshuāng bái xié guì.

(T) Nàshuāng bái xié bǐ zhèshuāng hēi xié gèng guì.

(The word gèng has to be deleted because the word guì "expensive" is not explicitly expressed for the thing compared.)

(S) Nàshuāng bái xié bǐ zhèshuāng hēi xié guì.

(T) Tā xiěde zì hǎo; nǐ xiěde bǐ tā xiěde hǎo.

(S) Tā xiěde zì hǎo; nǐ xiěde bǐ tā xiěde gèng hǎo.

1. Nàge fàngjiān hēi; zhège fàngjiān bǐ nèige (fàngjiān) gèng liàng.
2. Nàge fàngjiān liàng; zhège bǐ nèige gèng liàng.
3. Zhège shǒutíxiāng bǐ nèige shǒutíxiāng gèng dà.
4. Fántǐzì bǐ jiǎntǐzì gèng nán xiě.
5. Tā chànggē hěn nántīng; nǐ chànggē bǐ tā nántīng.

6. Zhèběn shū yǒumíng; nàběn shū bǐ zhèběn yǒumíng.
7. Nǐ fùqīn yǒu jīngyàn; tā fùqīn bǐ nǐ fùqīn yǒu jīngyàn.
8. Wǒde zìdiǎn bǐ nǐde (zìdiǎn) gèng hǎo.
9. Tā bǐ wǒ gèng ài xiěxìn.

I. Completion

Fill each blank with the suitable word(s) chosen from those given in parentheses after the sentence.

1. Nàjiā lǚguǎnli _____ fángjian dōu yǒu rén dīng le.
(dēngjī, suǒyóude)
2. Zhège shǒutíxiāng _____ shì tāde ba. Wǒ tīngshuō tā zhèngzài zhǎo tāde xínglǐ. (dàgài, xínglǐ)
3. Běnlái wǒmen _____ yào zài nàr zhù shítīān, kěshi hòulai zhǐ zhùle wǔtiān. (dàgài, dǎsuàn)
4. Zhèli wǎnshang hěn lěng. Nǐ chuān zhème shǎo yīfu chūqu, _____ búgòu ba. (kǒugpà, kōngtiáo)
5. Nǐ dào wàiguó qù lǚxíng, biéwàngle dài _____ .
(hūzhào, gōngdao)
6. Nǐ yí dào lǚguǎn, jiù xiān děi _____ . (dēngjī, jiézhàng)
7. Nǐ líkai lǚguǎn de shíhou, lǚguǎnli shōuqiánde huì gěi nǐ _____ .
(dēngjī, jiézhàng)
8. Xiànzài lǚguǎnli dōu yǒu _____ . (lěngqì hé nuǎnqì, jiézhàng hé xiǎofèi)
9. Měinián qīyuè hé bāyuè dào nèige dìfang qù lǚxíng de rén _____ duō. (gèng, zuì)
10. Wǒmen zhèyìbān, Bídé shuō Zhōngwén shuōde _____ hǎo.
(gèng, zuì)

J. Negation

Negate (or reverse the negation in) the following sentences by changing the underlined elements. Sometimes the change may involve one or two words other than bu or méi.

(T) Wǒ hái méi dīng lǚguǎn ne.

(We haven't made the hotel reservation.)

(S) (In this case, reverse the negation)

Wǒ dīng le lǚguǎn le.

(We have made the hotel reservation.)

OR

Wǒ dīng lǚguǎn le.

(le is added while méi is deleted.)

1. Míngnián wǒ yīdìng qù lǚxíng.
2. Wǒ dǎsuàn dào Guǎngzhōu qù.
3. Wǒ bǎ wǒ suǒyǒude qián dōu huā wánle.
4. Wǒmen líkai lǚguǎn de shíhou, gěi xiǎofèi le.
5. Tā zhǎozhào tāde hùzhào le.
6. Shuāngrénfáng bǐ dānrénfáng guì.
7. Wǒde fángjian gēn tāde (fángjian) yíyàng.
8. Wǒ nàjian fángjiān shì cháo nán de.
9. Wǒmen dōu méiyǒu fázi; hòulai tā xiǎngchū yíge fázi lái.
(OR: hòulai tā yě máixiǎngchū fázi lái.)
10. Wǒ dào fēijichǎng qù de shíhou, wàngle dài hùzhào le.

DRILLS II



A. Tell your teacher:

1. the year, month, and the day that you were born.
2. the location of the high school you attended.
3. the (physical) environment that surrounds the high school.

EX: a. Wǒ shì yījiūliùlíng nián yīyuè yīhào shēngde.

b. Wǒ shàngguode nàge zhōngxué shì zài Jiùjīnshān chéngli Dì Shíjiǔ Jiē. Duōshao hào wǒ wàngle.

c. Nàge xuéxiào bútài dà, zhǐyǒu yīzuò¹ sìcéng² gāode dàlóu. Dàlóu qiántou jiùshì Dì Shíjiǔ Jiē, jiēshang yǒu diànchē³ yě yǒu gōnggòng qìchē. Lóu hòutou yǒu hěnduō zhùzhái⁴. Tāmende fángzi wàitōu búàn yǒu shù⁵ yě yǒu huācǎo⁶. Lóude zuǒbiān⁷ yǒu yíge yóujú, yòubiān⁸ yǒu sì-wǔjiā yínháng...

(1) zuò M: for mountain, bridge, statue, building

(2) céng M: story, floor

(3) diànchē N: streetcar, trolleybus

(4) zhùzhái N: residence

(5) shù N: tree (M: -ke)

(6) huācǎo N: flowers and plants

(7) zuǒbiān N-M: left side

(8) yòubiān N-M: right side

B. State that you want to buy something and that the thing you want to buy is of a certain quality, year and price.

EX: Wǒ yào mǎi yíbié jiùde qìchē. Wǒ yào bāyīniánde. Wǒ xiǎng huā wǔqiānkuài (qián).

PN AV V Nu ----- M SV N

Wǒ yào mǎi	yí/yī èr sān sì wǔ liù qī bā etc.	bù/liàng gè bǎ zhāng tào etc.	xīn jiù hǎo guì etc.	de	jiājū qìchē diànshì/lùyīnjī/ shūjiàzi/ diànzǐ jìsuànjī yīzi zhuōzi etc.
------------	---	--	----------------------------------	----	--

PN AV Nu ----- M---P PN AV V Nu ----- M

Wǒ yào	qīlíng bāyī qù jīn qián etc.	niánde. Wǒ xiǎng huā	yìbǎi jībǎi yìqiān jìqiān yíwàn jìwàn etc.	kuài.
--------	---	----------------------	--	-------

C. State that the average hourly rate for a certain trade/pro-
 fession is only a certain amount of money.

EX: Shōuqiánde (rén) měige zhōngtōu zhǐ ná sìwǔ kuài (qián).

Mài bào Jiāoshū Zuò fàn etc.	de (rén) měige zhōngtōu zhǐ ná	sì shí wǔ etc.	kuài (qián).
---------------------------------------	--------------------------------	-------------------------	--------------

D. State that a certain relative/friend, qīngī, is coming to see you soon.

Ex: Wǒde shūshu kuài lái kàn wǒ lái le.

PN-P

N

A

V(Pt) V PN V P(Pt)

Wǒde	<p>zǔfù*/yéye zǔmǔ*/nǎinai lǎoye* lǎolao* fùqin/bàba mǔqin/māma shūshu shēnshen gūfu* gūmǔ/gūmā* gūgu* jiùjiu* jiùmǔ/jiùmā* yí* yuèfù (father-in-law) yuèmǔ (mother-in-law) gēge sāozi* jiějie jiěfu* dìdi dìfù/dìmèi* mèimei mèifu* zhízi* zhīnǚ péngyou</p>	<p>kuài yào jiù jiùyào kuàiyào lìkè jiù</p>	lái kàn wǒ lái le.
------	---	--	--------------------

* See Drill II, Lesson 19 and 24 for the English equivalents of the above terms.

E. Select one of the following statements that you believe gives a fair description of the way you perform a certain activity. If you don't find one, make one up.

EX: Wǒ zǒulù* zǒude hěn màn, kěshi wǒ zǒude hěn duō.

PN	VO	V-P	A	SV	MA	PN	V-P	A	SV
	mǎi dōngxī	mǎi		duō		yòng		shǎo	
	xiǎng shì(qīng)	xiǎng		kuài		shuō		màn	
	kāi qìchē	kāi		kuài		kāi		hǎo	
	shuǐjiào	shuǐ		wǎn		qǐ		zǎo	
Wǒ	chīfàn	chī de hěn		duō, kěshi wǒ		chī de hěn		màn.	
	qǐchuáng	qǐ		zǎo		shuǐ		wǎn	
	kāi chuānghu	kāi		màn		guān		kuài	
	xiǎng shì(qīng)	xiǎng		màn		shuō		kuài	
	xué yǔyán	xué		kuài		shuō		màn	
	shuǐjiào	shuǐ		zǎo		qǐ		wǎn	

* zǒulù VO: walk/go on foot

F. Answer one of the following groups of questions. Give reason(s) to support your answers.

1. Nǐ tiāntian (everyday) yìgòng shàng jǐcì lóu? Xià jǐcì lóu? Gēn shéi yìkuàir shànglai? Gēn shéi yìkuàir xiàqu?
2. Nǐ tiāntian jìn jiàoshì jīnlai jǐcì? Nǐ chūqu jǐcì?
3. Nǐ tiāntian jìn shítáng jīnqu jǐcì? Jīnqu yǐhòu, nǐ chūlai bù chūlai?
4. Nǐde liánzhǎng* (CO)/Duìzhǎng* (OIC)/Dàduìzhǎng* (CO,AF) nǐ tiāntian néng kànjian jǐcì?
5. Nǐ huíjiā huíguo jǐcì? Nǐ xǐhuan huíqu ma? Rúguǒ nǐ néng (zài) huíqu; nǐ xǐhuan huílai ma?
6. Nǐmen niànwán duōshao kè le? Nǐmen xiěwán duōshao Hànzì le?

* See Lesson 19 for translations of terms used above.

G. Try to answer one of the questions below (all examples of resultative compound questions in potential form), and tell why it's possible or impossible to achieve the goal or accomplish the action.

1. Rúguǒ nǐ xiǎng zhāodài Guófáng Yǔyán Xuéyuànde Yuànzǎng/
Xiàozǎng, Fùxiàozǎng*, Zhíxíngguān* hé Bùduì Zhǐhufiyuán*, nǐ
xiǎng nǐ néng qǐngdedào tāmen ma?

2. Rúguǒ nǐ gěi Měiguó Zǒngtǒng (President) xiě yìfēng xìn, nǐ
xiǎng tā kàndejian ma?

3. Nǐ xiànzài zài zhèige yǔyán xuéyuàn xué Hànyǔ (Chinese
language), nǐ zhīdào nǐmen yǒu hěn duō gōngkè, nǐ xiǎng nǐ néng
xuédewán ma?

4. Rúguǒ nǐ xiǎng dào Ālāsījīā (Alaska) qù lǚxíng, nǐ xiǎng nǐ
(zǒulù) zǒudedào ma?

H. Answer one of the following questions and support your answer.

1. Shítángle fàn nǐ chīdebǎo, háishi chībubǎo?

2. Shítángle fàn nǐ lǎoshi (always) chīdexiàqu ma?

3. Shénme dōngxī nǐ mǎideqǐ? Shénme dōngxī nǐ mǎibuqǐ?

4. Nǐ kàndeqǐ shéi? Nǐ kànbuqǐ shéi?

5. Nǐ tiāntian wǎnshàng dōu shuǐdezháo ma? Shénme shíhou nǐ
shuǐbuzháo?

6. Zài zhège chénglǐtōu nǐ mǎidezháo háishi mǎibuzháo Zhōngguó
zuòde qìchē?

7. Nǐ pǎolelù¹ (mànpǎo² -- jogging) yǐhòu nǐ hái zǒudedòng ma?

* See Lesson 19 for the English equivalents of the terms used above.

1 See Drills II, Lesson 21.

2 See Drills II, Lesson 18 and 20.

I. Tell your classmates about your experiences at the DLI outpatient clinic (ménzhěnsuǒ).

EX: Zài wǒmen xuéxiàode yīwùsuǒ/ménzhěnsuǒ wǒ kànguo yíci bìng. Yīshēng, hùshī (nurse) hé fúwùyuán duì wǒ dōu hěn kèqì. Tāmen yě hěn zhùyì wǒde jiànkāng. Nàcì wǒ kànde shì ěrduo. Wǒ lǎoshi tīngbuqīngchu. Yàofáng gěi wǒde yào zhēnhǎo, wǒ yòngle yíci jiù hǎole! (etc.)

J. The POM Health Clinic is an outpatient clinic which provides care for active duty service members xiànyì jūnrén and their families. Have you used any of its services (listed below) before? If you have, tell your classmates about it.

1. Baby clinic (xiǎoér kē)
2. Immunization (miǎnyì hé zhùshè)
3. Weight clinic (tǐzhòng kē)
4. Obstetric care (chǎn kē)
5. Mental hygiene (xīnlǐ wèishēng)
6. Pharmacy (yàofáng)
7. Laboratory (huàyànshì)
8. X-ray (X-xiàn, zhào X guāng/tòushì)
9. Eye clinic (yǎn kē, at Fort Ord Hospital)
10. Physical Examination (tǐgé jiǎnchá, also at Fort Ord)

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

Activity 1

Personalized Questions

1. Nǐ zài zhège chéngshìde (city) jǐjiā bǎihuò-gōngsī huòshì fúzhuāng-shāngdiànli dōu mǎiguoxiē shénme? Nǐ juéde tāmen de dōngxi zěnmeyàng? Jiànqián hái gōngdào ma?
2. Rúgǎo nǐ mǎide yīfu bù héshì nǐ qǐng tāmen gěi nǐ huàn huòshì gǎi, tāmen kěn ma?
3. Zhèlide shòuhuòyuán bǐ nǐ lǎojiāde kèqi háishi gēn nǐ lǎojiāde yiyàng? Nǐ yǒuguo yíci hěn bù yúkuàide (pleasant) jīngyàn (experience) ma?
4. Nǐ bǎ nǐ zuì xǐhuande jǐge yánsè* gào song wǒmen.
5. Nǐ zuì xǐhuan shénme yàngzide liàozi? Yáng máo (wool) zuòde? Nílongde (nylon)? Bùde (cloth)? Sīde (silk)?

Activity 2

Role Playing

Procedure: Work in pairs. While one student role plays a customer, the other can be the clerk of a clothing store. Then switch roles.

Note: Be sure to compare sizes, colors, materials and prices.

Activity 3

Discussion

Procedure: The class will discuss the following topic.

What one has to do to maintain a good healthy body?

* hēi (black), bái (white), zōngsè (brown), zǐ (purple/violet), fěnhóng (pink), júhuáng (orange), huīsè (grey/ashy), jīnsè (gold), yínsè (silver) mǐsè (beige), mǐhuáng (cream), etc.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

Translation Exercise 1: Chinese-English

1. Shíbāsuidē Wú Ziqiáng zài dàxué niànshū. Měige zhōumò tā zài yìjiā lǚguǎn zuò fúwùyuán.

2. Yǒu yìtiān xuéxiàoli de Liú lǎoshī gēn tā shuō, "Ziqiáng, wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ yìdiǎnr shì. Wǒ yǒu yíge péngyou yào cóng biéde (other) dìfang lái zhèr bànshì. Tā jiào wǒ tí tā zài lǚguǎn dīng yíge fángjian. Duōshao qián yìtiān?"

3. Ziqiáng: "Bùyíyàng. Shuāngrénfáng pīngjun yìbǎi'èrshi kuàiqián yìtiān. Dānrénfáng píngjūn yìbǎi kuài."

4. Liú: "Zhème guì a! Shuāngrénfáng bǐ dānrénfáng dà duōshao ne?"

5. Z: "Bùyídìng. Dānrénfáng yě yǒu dà de, búguo lǐtōu zhǐ yǒu yìzhang shuāngrén chuáng. Shuāngrénfángli yǒu liǎngzhang shuāngrén chuáng."

6. L: "Nàme, dānrénfáng jiù kěyǐ le. Xiànzài lǚguǎnli dōu yǒu kōngtiáo shèbèi ba. Wǒ zhège péngyou bú pà rè, kěshì pà lěng."

7. Z: "Suǒyǒude fángjian dōu yǒu lěngqì hé nuǎnqì. Nín zhèwei péngyou dǎsuàn zhù duójiǔ ne?"

8. L: "Dàgài liǎnge xīngqì. Tā lái bàn hùzhào, yùbèi dào wàiguó qù zuò mǎimai."

9. Z: "Tā kěyǐ dǎ diànbào huòshì dǎ diànhuà dào lǚguǎn dīng fángjiān."

10. L: "Tā búfàngxīn. Tā jiào wǒ dào lǚguǎn xiān kànkàn fángjian, ránhòu zài dīng. Tā yào yìjian hěn liàng de, yīnwei tā bùxǐhuan báitiān kāi dēng."

11. Z: "Zuǐhǎo zhǎo yìjian yǒu zuòbèi cháonán de chuānghu."

12. L: "Tā yě búyào cháo jiē de chuānghu, yīnwei tā pà yèlǐ yǒu qìchē de shēngyīn."

13. Z: "Zhèwei xiānsheng yǒu diǎnr máfan. Jīntiān xiàkè yǐhòu wǒ péi nín dào lǚguǎn qù kànkàn, hǎobuhao?"

14. L: "Hǎo a. Nàme jiù děi máfan nǐ le."

Translation Exercise 2: English-Chinese

(Wu Ziqiang and teacher Liu continue their conversation.)

15. Liu: Ziqiang, what do you do in the hotel?

16. Ziqiang: Mostly I take the baggage for the guests. Some ask me to pay the bill (settle the account) for them when they leave.

17. L: Do they give you tips?

18. Z: They all want to, but we do not accept (tips).

19. L: Are there things difficult to handle?

20. Z: Some people took the wrong luggage at the airport and found out (saw) after they got to the hotel. Then they asked us to find a way to handle it (to straighten it out).

21. L: (There are) so many suitcases look the same. I am afraid it is very easy to take the wrong ones at the airport.

22. Z: Once there was a guest who had too many suitcases. After he checked in (registered) he noticed (saw) he still had one baggage ticket. He asked me to take the baggage ticket to the airport to bring back the suitcase.

23. L: You must have got a lot of experience from this job.

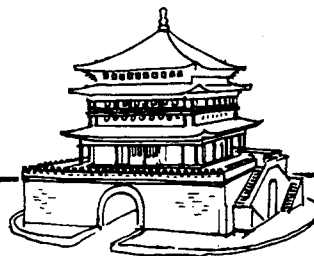
24. Z: The worst trouble is this one: Once a guest said his bed was uncomfortable; he wanted to change rooms. At that time all the rooms were occupied.

25. L: That shouldn't be your responsibility.

26. Z: No, it's not my job. Somebody else finally found a way: The hotel bought a new bed for the guest.

LESSON 26

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- Wàng and wàng ... guǎi.
- Direction words: dōng, xī, nán, běi.
- Jiùshi ... yě and other linking combinations.
- How streets are named.
- Uses of -bù, -quǎn and pángbiānr.
- The CV lí.



Lùshang yǒu ge gōnggòng-qìchē.

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- Give and receive directions on how to go somewhere.
- Ask and answer questions about whether something is close or far away.
- Discuss how you feel: tired, lazy, comfortable, etc.
- Use a cab.

GLOSSARY



1. bù	部	M: section, zone, part
2. bùfāng	不妨	A: might as well
3. cháng	长	SV: be long
4. dǎtīng	打听	V: to inquire or ask about
5. dàmén	大门	N: front entrance/door/gate
6. dāngzhōng	当中	PW: the center of, middle of, in between, among
7. duǎn	短	SV: be short
8. fāngxiàng	方向	N: direction
9. fùjìn	附近	N: nearby, in the vicinity of
10. fúwùtái	服务台	N: service desk/counter
11. gōnggòng-qìchē	公共汽车	N: public bus (M: <u>-liàng</u> 辆)
12. chūzū-qìchē	出租汽车	N: taxicab (PRC)
jìchéngchē	计程车	N: taxicab (Taiwan)
13. guǎi	拐	V: to turn
14. Huáihǎi	淮海	N: name of a street
hǎi	海	N: sea
15. huò	货	N: goods, commodities
16. jìn	近	SV: be near
17. jìushi ... yě	就是...也	MA: even if ... nevertheless
18. jùlí	距离	N: distance
19. lǎn	懒	SV: be lazy
20. lèi	累	SV: be tired
21. lí	离	CV: from (be separated from)
Nǐ lǎojia lí zhège xuéyuàn yuǎn bùyuǎn?		(Is your home far from this institute?)

22. lǐ	里	M: a Chinese mile (1/3 mile)
yīnglǐ	英里	M: mile (an English mile)
23. lǐngshìguǎn	领事馆	N: consulate
a. lǐngshì	领事	N: consul
b. zǒnglǐngshì	总领事	N: consul general
24. lù	路	N/M: road/route
25. lùkǒu	路口(儿)	N: intersection, crossing
26. Nánjīng	南京	N: Nanking
27. pángbiān(r)	旁边(儿)	N: side
28. qiǎokèlì	巧克力	N: chocolate
29. táng	糖	N: sugar, candy
30. wàng/wǎng	往	CV: towards
31. xiǎochīdiàn	小吃店	N: snack bar, lunch room
32. xiǎomàibù	小卖部	N: snack counter, refreshment room, variety shop
33. Yìguó/Yìdàlì	意国/意大利	N: Italy
34. Yìzhí	一直	A: straight ahead, direct
35. Yǒngān	永安	N: name of a street (Lit. lasting peace)
36. yǒuyì	友谊	N: friendship
37. yuǎn	远	SV: be far
38. yuēhuì	约会	N: appointment, engagement
yuē	约	V: to make an appointment, to engage, to invite
39. zánmen	咱们	N: we (including both the speaker and the person or persons spoken to)
40. zhuǎnchē	转车	VO: to transfer to another train or bus

OLD WORD/LEXICAL ITEM WITH NEW MEANING/FUNCTION

41. -liǎo

了

RVE: shows capability for doing and/or carrying through to completion (The ending -liǎo appears only in the potential type.)
(I can eat this bowl of rice.)

Zhè wǎn fàn wǒ chīdeliǎo

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



Wèn Fāngxiàng - Asking for Directions

Frame 1

1	M: Qǐngwèn, <u>xiǎomàibù</u> zài nǎli?	Excuse me, where is the snack counter?
2	DC: Nǐ wàng lǐ(bian) yīzhǐ zǒu, kànjiàn lóuti jiù xià-lóu. <u>Xiǎomàibù</u> jiùzài lóuti gen diànti <u>dāngzhōng</u> . Nǐ yào mǎi shénme?	Walk straight ahead inside. When you see the stairway, you walk downstairs. The snack counter is right in between the stairway and elevator. What do you want to buy?
3	M: <u>Yīguode qiǎokèlì táng</u> .	Italian chocolate.
4	DC: Wǒmende xiǎomàibù búdà, huò bùduo, jiùshì yǒu qiǎokèlì táng, yě bùyídìng yǒu yīguode. Wǒ xiǎng nǐ zuì hǎo dào Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn qù kànkàn.	Our snack counter isn't big. The goods aren't many; even if we have chocolate, it isn't necessary that we have Italian chocolate. I think you'd better check Friendship Store.
5	M: Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn zài nǎr?	Where is Friendship Store?
6	DC: Zài Nánjīng Dōnglù, lǐ zhèr bù tài jìn.	On Nanjing East Road. It is very far from here.

Notes:

1 Xiǎomàibù, "snack counter," or "variety shop," is a small shop inside a building. In a museum the shop sells cigarettes, sweet buns, and soda. In a hotel, socks, fruit, bread, and wine.

2 Wàng/wǎng, "to," or "towards." The Co-Verbs dào and wàng/wǎng may both be translated as "to." Wàng/wǎng, however, means simply "towards" or "in the direction of," while dào implies eventual arrival at a destination. Wàng lǐ(bian) means, literally, "towards the inside."

3 Dāngzhōng, "in the middle of," or "in the center of." It is sometimes used as a Place Word:

Nǐ zhànzai zuǒbianr,
ta zhànzai yòubianr,
wǒ zhànzai dāngzhōng.

You stand at the left, he/she stands at the right, and I'll stand in the middle.

And sometimes used to indicate "among":

Zài nimen dāngzhōng
shéi zuì xiǎo?

Who is the youngest among you?

4 Jiùshì ... yě, "even if ... nevertheless." You already learned jiù shì, "that is precisely," in Lesson 8, as an Emphatic Adverb/Equative Verb. The Movable-Adverb jiùshì ... yě is used here as an example of the many pairing adverbial elements for linking. Other examples:

búdàn ... yě	not only ... but also
[rúguǒ ... jiù	if ... then
[yàoshi ... yě	if ... also
[yīnwei ... jiù	because ... then
[yīnwei ... suóyī	because ... therefore
[suīrán ... kěshì	although ... (but)
[suīrán ... hái(shì)	although ... still

Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn, "Friendship Store". The Friendship Store was established by the People's Republic of China (PRC) for the convenience of the tourists and resident foreigners throughout the major cities of China (and also to obtain foreign exchange). To make a purchase in these stores, one first must buy a special script in a bank. The local currency, Rénmínbì, "people's currency," is not accepted in these stores.

6 Nánjīng Dōnglù: In Guǎngzhōu, Shànghǎi, Táiběi and many other cities, the street direction is given after the street name.

Nánjīng Dōnglù

Nanking East Road

In Běijīng the street direction is given before the street name.

Dōng Chángān Jiē

East Changan Street

Lí: The Co-verb lí means "from," as in "to be apart from." Like other Co-verb phrases, a phrase containing lí precedes the main verb--in this case, the Stative Verb jìn, "to be near."

Frame 2

7	M: <u>Dào nàr qù zěnmē zǒu?</u>	How do I get there?
8	DC: Nǐ chūle fàndiànde <u>dàmén</u> wàng dōng zǒu, dào le dì sāngē <u>lùkǒu(r)</u> wàng yòu <u>guǎi</u> , rán-hòu yìzhí wàng qián(biān) zǒu liǎng sān <u>lǐ</u> jiù dào le.	You go out the front gate of the restaurant and walk towards the east, turn right as you reach the third intersection, then walk straight ahead for two or three miles.
9	M: Nàme yuǎn a! Nánjīng Dōnglù búshì lí zhèr hěn jìn ma?	That far! Isn't Nangjing East Road very near here?
10	DC: Nánjīng Dōnglù hěn cháng. Dàgài yǒu wǔliùlǐ. (Pointing at a city map) Nǐ kàn, zánmende fàndiàn zài xībiān, Yǒuyǐ Shāngdiàn zài dōngbiān.	Nangjing East Road is very long. Here you see our restaurant is on the west side; Friendship Store is on the east side.
11	M: Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr <u>lǎn</u> , zǒuzhe qù tài <u>lèilè</u> . Zuò <u>gōnggòng qìchē</u> dào <u>dàodeliǎo</u> ma?	I'm a little lazy; I'll be too tired walking there. Can I get there by bus?
12	DC: <u>Dàodeliǎo</u> . Nǐ zuò Shìèrlù <u>gōnggòng qìchē</u> , dào le Huáihǎi Lù <u>zhuǎnchē</u> . Zuò Liùlù <u>chē</u> ; dào le Yǒngānlù xiàchē wàng běi zǒu, guò sāntiáo jiē jiù dào le. Nàr yǒu yíge zhǎnlǎngǎn, Yǒuyǐ Shāngdiàn jiù zài zhǎnlǎngǎn <u>pángbiān</u> .	You can. You take No. 12 bus to Huaihai Road and transfer to No. 6 bus. Get off on Yong'an Road, then walk towards the north about three blocks. There's an exhibition building, and Friendship Store is right next to it.

7 Dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu? This sentence consists of a topic, dào nàr qù, "to go to that place," followed by a question about that topic, zěnmē zǒu? "How do I go?" Qù, translated as "to go," focuses on the destination, while zǒu focuses on the route taken to get there.

8 Dàmén: Mén in addition to meaning "door," means "gate." The word dàmén may also be used to refer to a main gate as well as a main door.

Dōng, as a direction word The conventional Chinese order for the points of the compass is dōng, nán, xī, běi, "east, south, west, north." Direction names are a part of many Chinese provinces and cities. Here are some examples:

Héběi
Hénán

north of the (Yellow) River
south of the (Yellow) River

Húběi	north of the (Dòngtíng) Lake
Húnán	south of the (Dòngtíng) Lake
Shāndōng	east of the (Tàiháng) Mountains
Shānxī	west of the (Tàiháng) Mountains
Nánjīng	southern capital
Běijīng	northern capital
Táiběi	Taiwan north
Táinán	Taiwan south

Lùkǒu(r), "intersection" Literally, this word means "road opening."

Guǎi, "to turn": The verb guǎi usually refers to a 90-degree turn, but it may also refer to a 180-degree turn. In Chinese, if the building you are leaving is on a corner, going along one side and then turning the corner may be thought of as a single step.

11 Gōnggòng qìchē, "public bus (local)" Gōnggòng literally means "public" and qìchē means "automobile."

-liǎo This is one of the common endings to Resultative Compound Verbs. It shows capacity for doing and/or carrying something through to completion. In this case Dàodeliǎo ma? means "Am I able to arrive there?"

12 Zuò 12 lù, "takes the number 12 (bus)": Lù is the word for "route." Zuò means "to ride/to go by/to take (a conveyance)."

Huáihǎi Literally, the "Huai Sea." This term is abbreviated from the Huái-Hǎi Zhàngyì, Huai Sea Campaign, (Nov. 6, 1948-Jan. 10, 1949) considered by the PRC as the third decisive campaign in the Chinese Civil War (1945-1949). Huái is abbreviated from Huáihé the "Huái River," and Hǎi refers to the coast in East China. Huáihé is in the Anhuí and Jiāngsū Provinces.

Zhuǎnchē, "transfer to another train or bus" Zhuǎn is used here the same way as huàn (See Lesson 13) to mean changing from one bus to another at Huáihǎi road.

Pángbiān(r), "beside," "next to," "alongside of," "the side."
Wǒ zhùzài tāmen jiā páng- I live right next to their
biān(r). place.

Tā pángbiān(r) nàge rén The man beside him is Old Wang.
shì Lǎo Wáng.

Frame 3

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 13 | M: Yǒu chūzū qìchē méiyǒu? | Is there any taxicab? |
| 14 | DC: Yǒu. Nǐ kéyǐ dào nàge fúwùtái qù qǐng tāmen tī nǐ dǎn diànhuà jiào yǐliàng chūzū qìchē. | Yes. You can ask that service desk for assistance to call a taxicab. |
| 15 | M: Bùnéng zài jiēshàng jiào ma? | Can't I call (hail) one in the street? |
| 16 | DC: Bùxíng. Jiēshàng bù cháng yǒu. | No. There are few in the street. |
| 17 | M: Wǒ shì cóng Měiguó Xībù yíge xiǎochéng lái de. Měiguóde xiǎochéng yě méiyǒu hěn duō chūzū qìchē, yě bùnéng zài jiēshàng jiào. | I came from a small town in the west of America. The small towns in America don't have many taxicabs, nor can we hail (them) in the street. |

13 Chūzū qìchē, "taxi" In PRC, "taxi" is often referred to as chūzūchē, whereas in Taiwan it is called jìchéngchē.

Frame 4

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 18 | M: Zài gēn nǐ dǎtīng yíjiàn shì. Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn lí Měiguó Lǐngshiguǎn bǐ wǒmen zhège fàndiàn jìn ma? | Let me ask you about one more thing. Is Friendship Store nearer to the American Consulate than our restaurant? |
| 19 | DC: Jìn duōle. Nǐ hái xiǎng dào Lǐngshiguǎn qù ma? | Much nearer. Are you still thinking of going to the consulate? |
| 20 | M: Wǒ sīdiǎnzhong zài Lǐngshiguǎn yǒu yíge yuēhuì. Wǒ qùle Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn yǐhòu zài dào nàr qu. | I have an appointment at the consulate at four o'clock. After going to Friendship Store I'll go there. |
| 21 | DC: Lǐngshiguǎn fùjìn yǒu yíge túshūguǎn, nǐ yǒu gōngfu bùfang dào nàr qù kànkàn. | There's a library near the consulate; if you have time, go take a look. |
| 22 | M: Nà liǎngge dìfāngde jùlǐ yǒu duōyuǎn? | How far is it between the two places? |

Frame 4 (Continued)

23	DC: Hěnjin. Nǐ búshì cháng-cháng dào zhège fàndiàn fùjīnde xiǎochīdiàn chí diǎnxīn ma? Lǐngshìguǎn lí túshūguǎn gēn wǒmen zhèr lí nàge xiǎochīdiàn yíyàng jìn.	Very near. Don't you often go to eat at that snack bar in the restaurant? From the consulate to the library is as near as from our place to the snack bar.
24	M: Xiànzài wǒ míngbáile. Duō xiè, duōxiè.	Now I understand. Thanks a lot.
25	DC: Búxiè, búxiè.	Don't mention it.

17 Bù, "part," "section"

Wǒ hěn xǐhuan Měiguó Nánbù.

I like the southern part of the United States very much.

(Bù was used in Lesson 13 as a measure word for machines, instruments, automobiles, etc., and it was used as a noun, ministry/department (DOD) in Lesson 15.)

18 Lǐngshìguǎn The word guǎn means "building" or "establishment," as in fànguǎn, an establishment where food is served. The examples below illustrate the use of guǎn.

dàshǐ (Les. 21)	ambassador
dàshìguǎn	embassy
lǐngshǐ	consul
lǐngshìguǎn	consulate
zhǎnlǎn (Les. 12)	exhibit
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	exhibition hall

Notice that the shǐ/shì in dàshìguǎn/lǐngshìguǎn lose their tones.

19 Jīnduōle, "very much nearer," When making a two-place comparison, one may choose any of the following phrases. Example:

X lí Y (Neg) PH

Wǒ jiā lí Guófángbù Yǔyán Xuéyuàn (bù) hěnjin.

My home is (not) quite near to the Defense Language Institute.

hěnjin/hěnyuǎn
jīnde hěn/yuǎnde hěn
fēicháng jìn/fēicháng yuǎn
tìbiéjìn/tèbié yuǎn

quite near/quite far
very near/very far
unusually near/unusually far
especially near/especially far

zhēnjìn/zhēn yuǎn
jìnjíle/yuǎnjíle
tài jìn/tàiyuǎn

really near/really far
extremely near/extremely far
too near/too far

When making a three or four-place comparison, one of the following phrases may be used. Examples:

1. X lí Y bǐ Z lí Y PH

Wǒ jiā lí (Guófángbù
Yǔyán Xuéyuàn) bǐ nǐ
jiā (lí Guófángbù Yǔ-
yán Xuéyuàn) jìn yì-
diǎnr.

My home is a little nearer to
DLI than your home.

2. X lí Y bǐ A lí B PH

Wǒ jiā lí Jiùjīnshān/
Sānfānshì bǐ nǐ jiā lí
Niūyuē yuǎn yidiǎnr.

My home is a little farther
from San Francisco than your
home is from New York.

jìn yidiǎnr/yuǎn yidiǎnr
jìn hǎoxiē/yuǎn hǎoxiē

a little nearer/a little farther
a good deal nearer/a good deal
farther

jìnde duō/yuǎnde duō
jìnde duōle/yuǎnde duōle

much nearer/much farther
very much nearer/very much far-
ther

对话

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | M: 请问, 小卖部在哪里? | Excuse me, where is the snack counter? |
| 2 | DC: 你往里(边)一直走, 看见楼梯就下楼。小卖部就在楼梯跟电梯当中。你要买什么? | Walk straight ahead inside. When you see the stairway, you walk downstairs. The snack counter is right in between the stairway and elevator. What do you want to buy? |
| 3 | M: 意国的巧克力糖。 | Italian chocolate. |
| 4 | DC: 我们的小卖部不大, 货不多。就是有巧克力糖, 也不一定有意国的。我想你最好到友谊商店去看看。 | Our snack counter isn't big. The goods aren't many; even if we have chocolate, it isn't necessary that we have Italian chocolate. I think you'd better check Friendship Store. |
| 5 | M: 友谊商店在哪儿? | Where is Friendship Store? |
| 6 | DC: 在南京东路, 离这儿不太近。 | On Nanjing East Road. It is very far from here. |

Frame 2

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 7 | M: 到那儿去怎么走? | How do I get there? |
| 8 | DC: 你出了饭店的大门往东走, 到了第三个路口(儿)往右拐, 然后一直往前(边)走两三里就到了。 | You go out the front gate of the restaurant and walk towards the east, turn right as you reach the third intersection then walk straight ahead for two or three miles. |
| 9 | M: 那么远啊! 南京东路不是离这儿很近吗? | That far! Isn't Nangjing East Road very near here? |
| 10 | DC: 南京东路很长。大概有五六里。你看, 咱们的饭店在西边, 友谊商店在东边。 | Nangjing East Road is very long. Here you see our restaurant is on the west side; Friendship Store is on the east side. |

Frame 2 (Continued)

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 11 | M: 我有一点儿懒,走着去太累了。坐公共汽车到得了吗? | I'm a little lazy; I'll be too tired walking there. Can I get there by bus? |
| 12 | DC: 到得了。你坐12路公共汽车,到了淮海路转车。坐6路车;到了永安路下车往北走,过三条街就到了。那儿有一个展览馆,友谊商店就在展览馆旁边。 | You can. You take No. 12 Bus to Huaihai Road and transfer to No. 6 Bus. Get off on Yong'an Road, then walk towards the north about three blocks. There's an exhibition building, and Friendship Store is right next to it. |

Frame 3

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 13 | M: 有出租汽车没有? | Is there any taxicab? |
| 14 | DC: 有。你可以到那个服务台去请他们替你打电话叫一辆出租汽车。 | Yes. You can ask that service desk for assistance to call a taxicab. |
| 15 | M: 不能在街上叫吗? | Can't I call (hail) one in the street? |
| 16 | DC: 不行。街上不常有。 | No. There are few in the street. |
| 17 | M: 我是从美国西部一个小城来的。美国的小城也没有很多出租汽车,也不能在街上叫。 | I came from a small town in the west of America. The small towns in America don't have many taxicabs, nor can we hail (them) in the street. |

Frame 4

- | | | |
|----|----------------------------------|--|
| 18 | M: 再跟你打听一件事。友谊商店离美国领事馆比我们这个饭店近吗? | Let me ask you about one more thing. Is Friendship Store nearer to the American Consulate than our restaurant? |
| 19 | DC: 近多了。你还想到领事馆去吗? | Much nearer. Are you still thinking of going to the consulate? |

Frame 4 (Continued)

- 20 M: 我四点钟在领事馆有一个约会。我去了友谊商店以后再那儿去。
I have an appointment at the consulate at four o'clock. After going to Friendship Store I'll go there.
- 21 DC: 领事馆附近有一个图书馆，你有工夫不妨到那儿去看看。
There's a library near the consulate; if you have time, go take a look.
- 22 M: 那两个地方的距离有多远？
How far is it between the two places?
- 23 DC: 很近。你不是常常到那个饭店附近的小吃店吃点心吗？领事馆离图书馆跟我们这儿离那个小吃店一样近。
Very near. Don't you often go to eat at that snack bar in the restaurant? From the consulate to the library is as near as from our place to the snack bar.
- 24 M: 现在我明白了。多谢，多谢。
Now I understand. Thanks a lot.
- 25 DC: 不谢，不谢。
Don't mention it.

SUMMARY



Frame 1

a. Directions can be given by using either of the following patterns:

Wàng AV/N V

Wǒ kàn chūzū-qìchē wàng
qián yìzhí zǒu.

I see the cab is going
straight ahead.

Wàng xī zǒule wǔyīnglǐ.

Walk five miles towards the
west.

Wàng AV/N guǎi

Zài nèige lùkǒur dǎi
wàng zuǒ guǎi.

At that corner you must turn
left.

Qǐng wàng yòu guǎi.

Please turn right.

b. Linking sentence

jiùshi ... yě, "even if ... (nevertheless)"

Jiùshi wǒmen méiyǒu qián,
yě kéyǐ jìnqù.

Even if we don't have money,
(nevertheless) we'll get in.

c. The CV lí is used to indicate the distance from, or even the distance between.

(X) lí Y AV-SV

Lí zhèr hěn jìn.

It's very close to here.

Wǒjiā lí xiǎomàibù bùyuǎn.

My house is not far from the
variety store.

Frame 2

a. The words for compass directions dōng, "east," nán, "south," xī, "west," and běi, "north" are often used in place names and in street names.

húběi

north of the lake

Zhōngshān Běilù

Zhongshan North Road

b. Lù, "road" is normally a noun, but is used as a measure when referring to a numbered bus route.

Zuò 12 Lù.

To ride on the No.12 bus
route

Frame 4

One of the following patterns is used to make comparisons among three or four objects.

X lí Y bǐ Z lí Y PH

Wǒ jiā lí xiǎochīdiàn bǐ
nǐ jiā lí xiǎochīdiàn
yuǎn yìdiǎnr.

My home is a little farther
from the lunch room than
yours.

X lí Y bǐ A lí B PH

Wǒ jiā lí Měiguó Lǐngshì-
guǎn bǐ nǐ jiā lí Yìguó
Lǐngshìguǎn yuǎnde duō.

My home is much farther from
the American Consulate than
yours is from the Italian
Consulate.

DRILLS I



A. Substitution. Replace the underlined place with one from the cue-list.

1. Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn zài lǐngshìguǎnde qiánbiānr.

cues:

2. behind

7. on the east side

3. on the right side

8. on the west side

4. on the left side

9. in the vicinity

5. on the north side

10. next

6. on the south side

B. Restructure. Reorganize each sentence by changing the subject, but do not change the meaning.

(T) a. Xuéxiào zài lǚguǎn hòu-
tou.

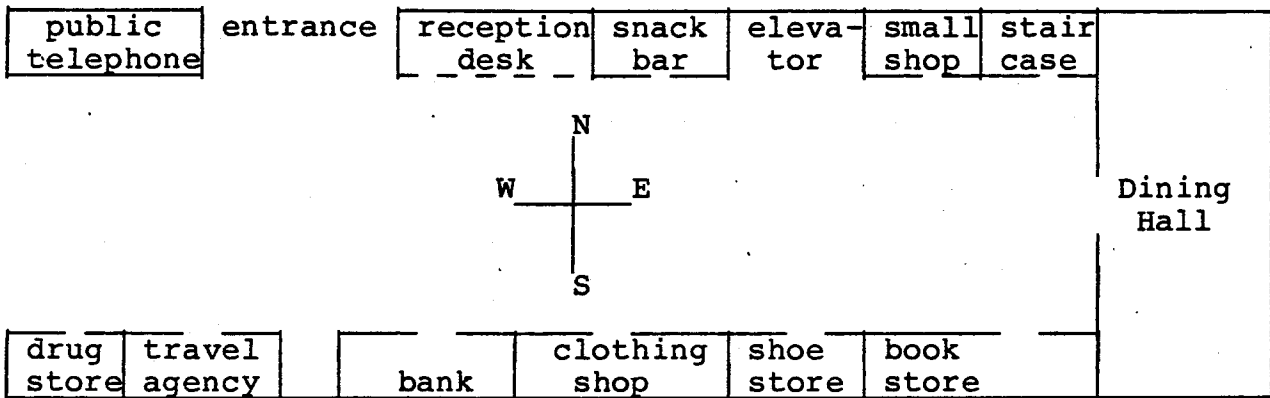
(S) a. Lǚguǎn zài xuéxiào qián-
tou.

b. Tā bǐ nǐ lèi.

b. Nǐ méiyǒu tā lèi.

2. Měiguó lǐngshìguǎn zài Yǒuyì Shāngdiànde dōngbiānr.
3. Wǒmen xuéxiào zài gōngyuǎnde qiánbiānr.
4. Gōngyuán zài Yǒuyì Shāngdiànde nánbiānr.
5. Xiǎomàibù zài yóujúde xībiānr.
6. Yóujú zài yínhángde běibiānr.
7. Yínháng zài xiǎochīdiànde dōngbiānr.
8. Lǎo Chén bǐ Xiǎo Zhāng lèi.
9. Xiǎo Zhào bǐ Lǎo Lǐ lǎn.
10. Wǒmende yuehuì bǐ nǐmende (yuehuì) duō.

Part of the ground floor of Meihua Hotel



C. Tell where a place is, according to the above map. Use the word dāngzhōng.

Ex: Dàmén zài fúwùtái gēn gōnggòng-diànhuàde dāngzhōng.

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. fúwùtái zài ... | 6. Yínháng |
| 2. Xiǎochīdiàn | 7. Fúzhūāngdiàn |
| 3. Diàntī | 8. Xiédiàn |
| 4. Lóutī | 9. Shūdiàn |
| 5. Xiǎomàibù | 10. Lǚxíngshè |

D. Locate a place by naming its next door neighbor, on either side, according to the above map.

(T) Dàmén zài ...	(S) Dàmén zài fúwùtáide xībiān.
	OR Dàmén zài gōnggòng-diànhuà de dōngbiān.

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. Yínháng zài ... | 6. Diàntī |
| 2. Fúzhūāngdiàn | 7. Xiǎomàibù |
| 3. Xiédiàn | 8. Xiǎochīdiàn |
| 4. Shūdiàn | 9. Fúwùtái |
| 5. Lóutī | 10. Lǚxíngshè |

E. Give directions to a certain place according to the map on the preceding page.

EX: Suppose we are entering the hotel from the main entrance.

(T) Dào lóutī nàr qu
(to the stairway)

(S) Jīnle dāmén wàng zuó guǎi;
yīzhí zǒudào shítáng nǎr. Lóu-
tī jiù zài nǐ zuǒbiānr.

(After entering the gate,
turn to your left; go straight
ahead to the dining hall. Then
the staircase is on your left.)

1. Suppose we are entering the hotel from the main entrance.
 - a. Dào xiǎomàibù qu.
 - b. Dào diàntī nàr qu.
 - c. Dào shítáng qu.
 - d. Dào xiǎochīdiàn qu.
2. Suppose we are coming down from the elevator.
 - a. Dào fúwùtái qu.
 - b. Dào gōnggòng diànhuà nàr qu.
 - c. Dào shítáng qu.
3. Suppose we are coming out of the clothing shop.
 - a. Dào yàodiàn qu.
 - b. Dào lǚxíngshè qu.
 - c. Dào shūdiàn qu.
4. Suppose we are coming out of the dining hall.
 - a. Dào lǚxíngshè qu.
 - b. Dào dāmén qu.

F. Question-Answer. Answer each question according to the information given on the map. Use the comparison word bǐ in your sentence.

(T) Shítáng lí dàmén jìn ne,
háishi lí xiǎochēdiàn jìn?

(S) shítáng lí dàmén bǐ (shítáng) lí xiǎochēdiàn yuǎn.

OR

Shítáng lí xiǎochēdiàn bǐ (shítáng) lí dàmén jìn.

1. Shítáng lí shūdiàn jìn ne, háishi lí lǚxíngshè jìn?
2. Lóutǐ lí xiǎomàibù yuǎn ma?
3. Dàmén lí fúwùtái jìn ne, háishi lí shítáng jìn?
4. Gōnggòng diànhuà lí yàodiàn jìn ne, háishi lí shítáng jìn?
5. Shūdiàn lí yàodiàn yuǎn ne, háishi lí fúwùtái yuǎn?
6. Xiēdiàn lí shūdiàn jìn ne, háishi lí gōnggòng diànhuà jìn?
7. Xiǎomàibù lí lóutǐ jìn ne, háishi lí lǚxíngshè jìn?
8. Xiǎochēdiàn lí diàntǐ jìn ne, háishi lí lóutǐ jìn?
9. Fúwùtái lí yínháng jìn ne, háishi lí shítáng jìn?
10. Lǚxíngshè lí fúzhūāngdiàn jìn ne, háishi lí shūdiàn jìn?

G. Question-Answer. Answer each question according to the information given on the map. Use yíyàng or chàbùduo yíyàng in your sentence.

(T) Dàmén lí fúwùtái jìn ne,
háishi lí gōnggòng diànhuà jìn.

(S) Dàmén lí fúwùtái gēn (lí)
gōnggòng diànhuà yíyàng jìn
(or yuǎn).

1. Fúwùtái lí dàmén jìn ne, háishi lí xiǎochēdiàn jìn?
2. Lǚxíngshè lí yàodiàn jìn ne, háishi lí yàodiàn yuǎn?
3. Shítáng lí gōnggòng diànhuà yuǎn ne, háishi lí yàodiàn yuǎn?
4. Fúzhūāngdiàn lí shítáng yuǎn ne, háishi lí gōnggòng diànhuà yuǎn?
5. Diàntǐ lí xiǎomàibù jìn ne, háishi lí xiǎochēdiàn jìn?

6. Xiǎomàibù lí diàntī jìn ne, háishi lí fúzhuāngdiàn jìn?
7. Xiédiàn lí shūdiàn jìn ne, háishi lí fúzhuāngdiàn jìn?
8. Yínháng lí fúzhuāngdiàn jìn ne, háishi lí lǚxíngshè jìn?
9. Shūdiàn lí shítáng jìn ne, háishi lí xiédiàn jìn?
10. Shūdiàn lí yàodiàn yuǎn ne, háishi lí gōnggòng diànhuà yuǎn?

H. Restructure. Reorganize each sentence into one using méiyou in a comparison expression, but do not change the meaning of the original sentence.

(T) Lǐngshìguǎn (lí Yǒuyì Shāng- diàn bǐ wǒmen lǚguǎn lí Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn) jìn.	(S) Wǒmen lǚguǎn (lí Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn) méiyou lǐngshìguǎn lí Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn nàme jìn.
--	---

OR Lǐngshìguǎn (lí Yǒuyì
Shāngdiàn) méiyou wǒmen lǚguǎn
lí Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn nàme yuǎn.

1. Wǒmen jiā lí xuéxiào bǐ (wǒmen jiā) lí gōngyuán jìn.
2. Wǒmen jiā (lí xuéxiào) bǐ gōngyuán lí xuéxiào jìn.
3. Wǒmen jiā (lí gōngyuán) bǐ xuéxiào lí gōngyuán jìn.
4. Lǐngshìguǎn lí Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn bǐ (lǐngshìguǎn) lí wǒmen xuéxiào yuǎn.
5. Nàge lùkǒur lí xiǎochǐdiàn bǐ (nàge lùkǒur) lí xiédiàn yuǎn.
6. Nàge lùkǒur (lí xiǎochǐdiàn) bǐ xiédiàn lí xiǎochǐdiàn yuǎn.
7. Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí wǒmen jiā bǐ (Xīnhuá Shūdiàn) lí nǐmen jiā yuǎn.
8. Wǒ bǐ nǐ lèi.
9. Nǐ bǐ wǒ lǎn.
10. Zhèzhǐ lán qiānbǐ bǐ nàzhǐ hēi qiānbǐ cháng.

I. Completion. Fill in each blank with the correct word chosen from those given in parentheses.

1. Nǐ zhīdao nà liǎngge dìfāng dāngzhōngde _____ ma?
(fùjīn, jùlí)
2. Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn zài língshìguǎn hé Xīnhuá Shūdiàn _____.
(jùlí, dāngzhōng)
3. Nàge xiǎochīdiàn jiù zài wǒmen jiāde _____.
(jùlí, fùjīn)
4. Rúguǒ búdàizhe dìtú, wǒ jiù búrènshì _____.
(fāngxiàng, jùlí)
5. Nǐ chūle dàmén jiù _____ yòu guǎi.
(wàng, zǒu)
6. Dào le lùkǒu jiù wàng dōng guǎi, ránghou _____ wàng qián zǒu.
(yìzhí, guǎi)
7. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ _____ yíjiàn shì(qing).
(dǎtīng, bùfāng)
8. Nǐ yǐjīng dào le zhèr le, _____ zài zhèr duō zhù jǐtiān.
(bùfāng, búbǐ)
9. Zhè liǎngzhi qiānbǐ, nǎ yìzhi _____?
(dà, cháng)
10. Zhè jiā diànlide _____ bǐ nà jiā (diànlide) duō.
(huò, jùlí)

J. Completion. Complete each sentence according to the information given in parentheses.

(T) Chūle dàmén wàng zuǒ guǎi,
ránhou ...
(go straight ahead)

(S) Chūle dàmén wàng zuǒ guǎi,
ránhou yìzhí wàng qián zǒu.

1. Dào le qiánbiān nàge lùkǒu, ...
(turn to your left)
2. Cóng zhèr yìzhí wàng qián zǒu, ...
(pass three intersections, you'll see)
3. Míngtiān xiàwǔ, wǒ yǒu ...
(an appointment)

4. Zhèjiàn shìqing wǒ bùzhīdao, wǒ děi ...
(ask somebody else)
5. Wǒ bùzhīdao wǒmen xuéxiào gēn gōngyuán dāngzhōngde ...
(distance)
6. Wǒ xiǎng zuò ...
(bus)
7. Gōngyuán jiù zài wǒmen jiā ...
(vicinity)
8. Nǐ yǐjīng dào le xuéxiào, ...
(might as well go to see the principal)
9. Tā měitiān dōu búniànshù; tā shì wǒmen bān ...
(the laziest)
10. Nàjiā dà shāngdiàn yǒu ...
(various kinds of merchandise)

DRILLS II



A. Make a comment or a statement about a certain person, institution, or material object.

- EX: a. Bānzhǎng shì yīwèi hěn huì shuōhuàde rén.
b. Guófáng yǔyán Xuéyuàn shì yíge hěn yǒumíngde xuéyuàn.
c. Zhè shì yībēn hěn yǒuyòngde Hànyǐng zìdiǎn.

B. State that you want to purchase something and ask how much money it will cost approximately.

- EX: Wǒ yào mǎide nàběn Dàlù chūbǎnde Yǐng-Hàn zìdiǎn děi sishíduokuài qián.

C. Identify by name and rank one of your classmates, and tell your teacher what he/she is doing right now in class.

- EX: Hē qīshuǐde nàwèi shì Wǎng Shàngshì (E-6).

D. State that after graduation (bìyè) you plan to go to a certain place first and then go on to another place by way of a certain town/city/state. Also, tell your classmates how you are going to go and how much money it will cost.

- EX: Bìyè yǐhòu wǒ jìhuà xiān huí lǎojiā, cóng lǎojiā wǒ yào jīngguo Zhǐjiāgē dào Dézhōu qù. Wǒ xǐhuan zuò huǒchē qù. Wǒ děi huā (spend) jībǎikuài qián.

E. Tell your teacher if there is a certain type of transportation (train, plane, bus, etc.) that can take you directly from your hometown to the biggest (or next to the biggest) city in your home state.

- EX: Cóng wǒde lǎojiā yǒu fēijī kényī zhíjiē (directly) fēidào Zhǐjiāgē qù.

F. Tell your classmates how, when, and where you went and what you did over the weekend.

- EX: Shàngge xīngqīliù wǒ xiān dào chénglǐ qù mǎile yìdiǎnr dōngxi, ránhòu jiù dào Jiùjīnshan/Sānfānshì de Zhōngguó chéng qù wánr qùle. Wǒ shì kāizhè zìjǐde qìchē qùde. (Wǒ) shì zǎoshàng bādiǎn cóng (zhège) chénglǐ chūfāde.

G. Tell your teacher how long you have been in the service and how long it will be before you can get out of the service (or be discharged).

EX: Wǒ jījīng dāngle yiniánde bīng¹ le. Wǒ hái děi dāng wǒniánde bīng cái kěyì tuīyì².

H. Tell your classmates who the person was that first introduced you to DLI. Are you now happy or unhappy about this school? When you first arrived here, who welcomed you to the post, yíngqū?

EX: Zhège xuéyuàn shì wǒde yíge hǎo péngyou jièshào wǒ láide. Xiànzài wǒ fēicháng gāoxìng, zhège dìfāngde qíngkuàng hái búcuò. Wǒ dào de nàtiān yǒu yíwèi shìguānzhǎng/jūnshìzhǎng (E-7, 8, & 9) zhànzài yíngfáng(barracks)/sùshè qiánbiānr huānyíng wǒ.

I. Did you dispose of, give away, throw away, sell, etc., anything before you arrived here in Monterey? Please tell your classmates about it.

EX: Wǒ líkāi lǎojiā/yíngfáng yǐqián, wǒ bǎ wǒ méi hēwánde chá yè (tea-leaves), kāfēi hé hěn duōde bēizi dōu sònggěi wǒde hǎo péngyou le.

J. Tell your classmates (a) what kind of thing you don't like to record, and (b) what kind of information you must write down.

EX: a. Wǒ hěn bùxǐhuan bǎ wǒ yuèmǔ (mother-in-law) shuōde huà lùxiàlai.
b. Wǒ bǐdēi bǎ wǒ tàitai jiào wǒ bànde shìqing xiěxiàlai. Rúguǒ wǒ bùxiěxiàlai wǒ jiù huì bǎ tā wàngle.

K. Describe to your teacher the place (room/apartment/house) where you are staying.

EX: Wǒ zhùde shì yíjiān báitiān dōu bú tài liàngde dānrénfáng. Lítoude jiājù hěn shǎo, yě bùshūfu. Kōngtiáode shèbèi yǒu, kěshì bú tài hǎo. Yīnwei zhīyou nuǎnqì, méiyǒu lěngqì. Yīnwei fángjiān xiǎo, suǒyǐ wǒ bǎ hěn duōde xínglǐ dōu fàngzài chuáng dīxià le.

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1. dāngbīng | VO: serve in the Armed Forces/be a soldier |
| 2. tuīyì | VO: release from military service |

L. Compare the place you have just described with your old place/house.

EX: Cóngqián wǒ zhùde fángjiān bǔdàn bǐ xiànzàide dà, yě bǐ xiànzàide shūfu. Fángjiān lǐtōu bǔdàn bùhēi, yě bǐ xiànzàide liàng. Xiànzài yòngde jiājù bǔdàn méiyǒu cóngqián de duō, yě méiyǒu cóngqián de hǎokàn.

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

Activity 1

Giving Information

Answer the following questions based on your experience with the hotel/motel business in the United States or overseas.

1. Nǐ juéde Měiguó lǚguǎnde/qìchē lǚguǎnde shèbèi bǐ wàiguode (foreign country's) hǎo yìdiǎnr háishi chàbuduō yíyàng?
2. Měiguode lǚguǎn/qìchē lǚguǎn yǒu yìxiē shénme yàngzide shèbèi zài wàiguode lǚguǎn/qìchē lǚguǎnli méiyǒu?
3. Lǚguǎnde/qìchē lǚguǎnde mǎimai zuì mángde shíhou shì nǎjǐge yuè? Biéde shíhou ne?
4. Zài nǐ zhùguode lǚguǎn/qìchē lǚguǎnli tóu, nǐ zuì bùxǐhuande shì nǎge? Wèishénme?

Activity 2

Discussion

Procedure: With the class, discuss the following topics:

1. Would you like to own and/or operate a hotel/motel here? Why?
2. If you were the manager, jīnglǐ, of a hotel/motel, what would you do to improve the service of your establishment?

Activity 3

Role Playing

Procedure: Work in pairs. While one of you plays a hotel/motel manager, the other plays a tourist, lǚkè, seeking a room for the night. Then switch roles.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. Chinese-English: Cover the Pinyin text below. Teacher: Randomly select students and read each paragraph/sentence twice with a short pause between readings. Student: Say aloud the English equivalent. (translate)

1. Pǐdé: Zìqiáng, chī yíkuài qiǎokèlitáng.
2. Zìqiáng: (Nále yíkuài) Xièxiè. Zhè shì Měiguohuò a. Shì nǐ dailáide ma?
3. Pǐ: Búshì. Shì wǒ mǔqīn jǐláide, gāng shōudao.
4. Zì: Nǐ dào zhèr cái yígeduō yuè, nǐ mǔqīn jiù pà nǐ méiyóu táng chīle.
5. Pǐ: Wǒ mǔqīn yìzhé dào xiànzài hái juéde wǒ shì xiǎoháizi.
6. Zì: É, duìle, jīntiān xiàwǔ zánmen dōu búshàngkè. Wǒ xiǎng dào hǎibiānr (beach) qu, nǐ yào búyào yíkuàir qu?
7. Pǐ: Bùxíng, wǒ děidào Měiguó Lǐngshìguǎn qu. Zuótiān dǎ diànhuà dīngle yíge yuēhuì, jīntiān xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn qù jiàn yíwèi lǐngshì.
8. Zì: Shì búshì shàngxíngqǐ lái jiǎng Měiguó wénhuàde nàwei lǐngshì.
9. Pǐ: Búshì. Shàngxíngqǐ lái de nàwei shì zōnglǐngshì.
10. Zì: Lǐngshì gēn zōnglǐngshì bùyíyàng ma?
11. Pǐ: Wǒ yě bùqīngchū, dàgài zōnglǐngshì lǎoyidiǎn. Nǐ shuōyishuō zuò gōnggòng qìchē zěnmé qu?
12. Zì: Chule xuéxiàode dàmen wàng yòu guǎi; zǒuguole lùkǒur nǐ jiù kànjian Shíwǔlù de gōnggòng qìchēzhàn le.
13. Pǐ: Duìle. Wǒ jǐdé nàge qìchēzhàn.
14. Zì: Nǐ shàngle Shíwǔlù de qìchē zuòdào Dìshíyìzhàn, jiùdào le Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn, jiù zài zhèjiā diànmén wàibiān xiàchē. Nàyìzhàn yě yǒu Liùlù chē.
15. Pǐ: Wǒ shì búshì jiù zài nàr huàn Liùlù chē.
16. Zì: Shìde. Shàngle Liùlùchē, zuòdao Dìjiùzhàn jiù dào le Měiguó Lǐngshìguǎn. Lǐngshìguǎn nàge lófàng hěn dà, lófàng shàngbiān guàzhe Měiguó guóqì, nǐ zài hěn yuǎn jiù kényi kànjianle.

B. English-Chinese: Teacher: Sequentially assign sentences to each student. Student: First read the sentence carefully, then translate into Chinese. Concentrate on word order, fluency, tones, and pronunciation.

1. Peter: Have you ever been to the American Consulate?
2. Ziqiang: Once. That was a long time ago when I was in elementary school. The consulate invited us students to visit their building.
3. P: Do you still remember anything (about it)?
4. Z: I remember after we entered the building, there was a reception desk in the center. I also remember that the consulate gave us chocolate (to eat).
5. P: What's the distance from here to the consulate? If I walk back, how long it will take?
6. Z: I don't know how many miles it is, but I think it will take at least one hour to walk back. Are you going to walk back? It must be tiring (You'll feel tired).
7. P: I don't mind being tired. I take it as exercise.
8. Z: I am very lazy. I never walked that far. I should do more walking too.
9. P: Sometimes riding a bus is very tiring too, especially when there are too many people riding in it.
10. Z: That is true. You don't have to walk the same route as the bus. There is a shorter way for walking.
11. P: I will take the map with me. If I make a wrong turn, I'll ask some other people (for information).
12. Z: Oh, the consulate is very close to the beach, hǎibian. If you come out early from the consulate you might as well go to the beach to join us.
13. P: OK, but don't wait for me. Nothing is certain yet. If I can come out from the consulate at about three o'clock, I'll go to the beach to look for you.
14. Z: We won't wait for you. We'll come back at about five o'clock.

LESSON 27

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- The passive markers bèi, jiào, and ràng.
- The reduplicated adverb yòu...yòu.
- The MA's yàoburán and yàobushi.



Zài jiēshang yòng zìxíngchē bān dà dōngxi.

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- Say that something was done by someone.
- Ask and answer questions about buying different types of plane (train) tickets.
- Ask and answer questions about moving or transporting things.

GLOSSARY



- | | | |
|--------------------|-------|---|
| 1. Ālāsījiā | 阿拉斯加 | N: Alaska |
| 2. bān | 搬 | V: to move (heavier articles) |
| bānjiā | 搬家 | VO: to move one's residence |
| 3. bānjī | 班机 | N: scheduled flights/air service |
| 4. Běi Měi(zhōu) | 北美(州) | N: North America |
| a. Nán Měi(zhōu) | 南美(州) | N: South America |
| b. Zhōng Měi(zhōu) | 中美(州) | N: Central America |
| 5. bèi | 被 | CV: by (passive voice marker) |
| 6. bǔ | 补 | V: to make up for; to mend, to patch |
| 7. cānchē | 餐车 | N: dining car |
| 8. chāozhòng | 超重 | SV: to overload, be overweight |
| a. zhòng | 重 | SV: be heavy, be weighty |
| b. chāo | 超 | V: to exceed, to surpass |
| 9. dānchéngpiào | 单程票 | N: one-way ticket |
| 10. dànshì | 但是 | MA: but, yet, nevertheless |
| 11. Dōngjīng | 东京 | N: Tokyo (lit. Eastern capital) |
| 12. fāngbiàn | 方便 | SV: be convenient |
| 13. fèixīn | 费心 | IE/VO: May I trouble you (to do something); Would you mind (doing something) to give a lot of care, take a lot of trouble |
| a. fèi | 费 | V: to waste |
| b. xīn | 心 | N: heart |
| 14. fēngjǐng | 风景 | N: scenery |

15. guòbàng 过磅 V: to weigh (on the scales)
bàng 磅 N: pound
16. guòdào 过道 N: aisle, passageway, corridor
Wǒ xǐhuan yige kào guòdàode
zuòwèi. (I like an aisle seat.)
17. Hángzhōu 杭州 N: Hangzhou (name of a famous city)
18. hòujīshì 候机室 N: airport waiting room
19. huíguó 回国 VO: to return to one's native country
20. jīngjì zuò 经济座(儿) N: economy seat
jīngjì 经济 N: economy, economics
21. kāiháng 开航 V/VO: to set sail/ to become open for navigation
22. kào 靠 A/V: near, by, to rely on /to lean against
Wǒ xǐhuan yige kào chūāng(hu)de
zuòwèi. (I would like to have a seat by the window.)
23. láihuípiào 来回票 N: round-trip ticket
24. liú 留 V: to keep, to set aside, to detain, to save
25. lǚkè 旅客 N: traveler, passenger
26. lùshang 路上 PW/A: on the road/ en route
27. luòshí 落实 V: to confirm, to make sure, to carry out, to fulfill
28. méníng 门厅 N: entrance hall, lobby
29. mínháng/mínyòng 民航/民用 N: civil aviation
hángkōng 航空
30. ná zǒu 拿走 V: to take (it) away
31. qǐfēi 起飞 V: to take off (plane)
32. qiányitiān 前一天 MA/N: the day before

33. quàn 劝 V: to persuade
34. shōushi 收拾 V: to put in order, to tidy,
to repair
35. shǒuxu 手续 N: procedures
36. shòupiàochù 售票处 N: ticket box office
37. suíshēn(dài) 随身(带) Ph: (carry) on one's person,
(take) with one
38. tíng 停 V: to stop
39. tóuděngzuò(r) 头等座(儿) N: first-class seat
40. tuōyùn 托运 V: to consign for shipment,
to check baggage
41. wòpū 卧铺 N: sleeping berth
wòchē 卧车 N: sleeping car, sleeper
42. wànyī 万一 C: just in case, if by any
chance
43. yàoburán 要不然 MA: otherwise
44. yàobushi 要不是 MA: if not
45. yílù píngān 一路平安 IE: have a pleasant journey
46. yòu...yòu... 又...又... A: both...and
47. yùdìng 预定 V: to subscribe, to book,
to place an order
yùxiān 预先 A: in advance
48. yuánlái 原来 MA: originally, as a matter of
fact
49. yùnfèi 运费 N: transportation/freight
expenses
yùn 运 V: to transport
50. yùnshū 运输 V/N: to transport/
transportation
51. zhífēi 直飞 A: fly nonstop

- | | | |
|------------|----|---|
| 52. zuòwèi | 座位 | N: seat |
| a. zuòr | 座儿 | N: seat |
| b. zuò | 座 | M: (for mountain, bridge, statue, etc.) |
| 53. zuǒyòu | 左右 | A: approximately, around, thereabout |

Old word(s) with new meaning/functions

- | | | |
|--------------------------|----|---|
| 54. língqián | 零钱 | N: small change |
| 55. zhǎo | 找 | V: to give change (in money) |
| 56. yìzhí | 一直 | A: continuously, all along, right up to now, always |
| Wǒmen yìzhí shì tóngshì. | | (We've been colleagues all along.) |

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



LESSON 27

Mǎi Huǒchē Piào hé Fēijī Piào

(Buying Train Tickets and Airline Tickets)

M: Martin
DC: Desk Clerk
TW: Ticket Window

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | M: Jīntiān shídiǎn bàn wǒ yào jiézhàng. Wǒ yǐjīng bǎ xíngli shōushi hǎole. Xiànzài jiù qīng fúwùyuán bǎ xíngli fàngzài zhège méntīngli xíngbùxíng? | I want to check out at ten-thirty today. I have already packed my baggage. Is it OK to ask the attendant to put my baggage in the lobby? |
| 2 | DC: Nà bútài hǎo. Nǐde xíngli huì bèi rén nǎzǎode. Háishi liúzài fángjiānli hǎo yidiǎnr. Shídiǎnzhōng wǒ jiào fúwùyuán gěi nǐ bǎ xíngli bān xiàlai. | That's not good. Your baggage might be taken away by somebody else. It's better to leave it in the room. I will tell the attendant to bring it down at ten o'clock. |
| 3 | M: Xièxie. | Thanks |

Notes:

1. Méntīng, "entrance hall/lobby": This term generally refers to the entrance hall or lobby of a building, rather than the entrance way of a private residence for the average family.

Bèi, the agent marker: When bèi is used as a Co-Verb in a passive sentence, it simply cannot be directly translated into English. This co-verb generally appears in sentences containing the following linear sequence:

NP1 - bèi - NP2 - VP

For example:

Lǎozhāng bèi tàitai màle
yídùn¹.

Old Zhang was scolded by his
wife.

1. yídùn means, literally, once.

NP1 Lǎozhǎng is the direct object of the sentence, bèi introduces the agent of the action, NP2 is the agent Zhāng Tàitai, and VP describes how the direct object, Lǎozhǎng, is affected by the action of the verb mà, "scold," and its complements -le yídùn.

The above linear sequence, however, is not the only form in which the bèi construction can occur. There are a number of variations. For example:

NP1 - bèi - VP

(1) Wǒ bèi qiǎngle. I was robbed.
NP2, the agent, is absent.

(2) The agent marker, bèi, can be substituted by verbs jiào and ràng.

NP1 - $\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{bèi} \\ \text{jiào} \\ \text{ràng} \end{array} \right]$ - NP2 - VP

Wǒde qián dōu $\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{bèi} \\ \text{jiào} \\ \text{ràng} \end{array} \right]$ - háizimen yòngle.

(My money has been all spent by my children.)

(3) The verb gěi may be added after NP2 optionally for emphasis.

NP1 - $\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{bèi} \\ \text{jiào} \\ \text{ràng} \end{array} \right]$ - NP2 - (gěi) - VP

Wǒde qián dōu $\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{bèi} \\ \text{jiào} \\ \text{ràng} \end{array} \right]$ háizimen (gěi) yòngle.

However, there is one important exception to the above substitution: When NP2, the agent is absent, as in example 1, the Co-Verb bèi must be present in the sentence. The following sentences are illustrations of this principle:

(correct) Wǒ bèi qiǎngle. I was robbed.

(incorrect) *Wǒ jiào qiǎngle.

(incorrect) *Wǒ ràng qiǎngle.

* Stands for ungrammatical sentence.

The agent marker bèi is used mainly (but not exclusively) for two important reasons:

- a. To express an adverse/pejorative situation (something unfortunate has happened)
- b. To express disposition of the object in the same way the bǎ construction does (see Lesson 25)

Bèi is used under the following conditions:

a. The direct object (NP1) must be acted on or be disposed of. In other words, the action must be performed by the agent (NP2) on the direct object.

b. The verb must be of the following types:

(1) action verb (such as ná, "take," in exchange 2)

(2) action and process verb (such as dǎsǐ, "beat to death")

(2) Verb of perception or cognition (such as kànjiàn, "see," zhīdào "to know," fāxiàn "discover," etc.)

c. The verb phrase, like the bǎ verb phrase, must be complex. Here are some examples of the types of complement in which a verb phrase may be used:

<u>le</u>	Aspect Marker
<u>xiàlai</u> , <u>shàngqu</u> , etc.	Compound Verb
verb- <u>de</u> <u>tàidà</u> , <u>tàixiǎo</u> , etc.	Manner Expression (after the verb)
<u>zài qiángshang</u> , <u>zài dīshang</u> , etc.	Co-Verb <u>zài</u> Phrase (after the verb)
verb- <u>fángzi</u> , verb- <u>xuésheng</u> , etc.	Indirect Object (after the verb)
<u>yíci</u> , <u>yíxià</u> , <u>yídùn</u> , etc.	Number plus measure. (after the verb)

To make a bèi sentence negative, place the negative adverb in front of bèi, not in front of the main verb.

NP1 - NEG - bèi - NP2 - VP

Remember that the English passive often does not correspond to the bèi construction in standard Chinese. Therefore, an English passive sentence can not be automatically translated to a bèi sentence in Chinese.

For example:

That painting was painted by Picasso.

The standard Chinese counterpart of the above sentence will be

Nàzhang huàr shì Picasso huàde.

but not

*Nàzhang huàr bèi Picasso huàle.

Frame 2

(M and DC are chatting.)	
4 DC: Nǐ dào le Shànghǎi jiù zuò fēijī huíguó ma?	Are you going back to your country by airplane after you arrive in Shanghai?
5 M: Búshì. Wǒ hái yào dào Nánjīng, Hángzhōu qù kànkàn.	No. I still want to go to Nanjing and Hanzhou to look around.
6 DC: Nǐ wèishénme bú zuò fēijī dào Shànghǎi qù ne? Zuò huǒchē yòu màn yòu bushūfu. Fēijī búdàn kuài yě bù tài guǐ.	Why don't you go to Shanghai by plane? The train is slow and also uncomfortable. The plane is not only fast, but also not too expensive.
7 M: Wǒ juéde huǒchē bǐ fēijī hǎo. Suǐrán màn yídiǎnr, dànshì kěyǐ zài huǒchēshàng kànkàn fēngjǐng, yòu kěyǐ zài cānchēshàng chīfàn...	I feel that the train is better than the plane. Although it is a bit slower, one can look at the scenery from the train and also can eat in the dining car.

Notes:

5. Hángzhōu: This city is famous for its scenic beauty. Its well-known lake, the West Lake, is often described as beautiful as a painting. The city is situated to the southwest of Shanghai.

6. ...yòu...yòu..., "both...and": The element following each yòu can be as simple as a stative verb or as complex as a full verb phrase.

Nǐ yòu huì shuō Yīnwén,
yòu huì shuō Pútōnghuà.

You can speak both English and Chinese.

* Denotes an ungrammatical sentence.

7. Cānchē means "a dining car" (on the train). Whereas cāntīng is the word for the dining room of a hotel, club, dormitory, etc. A dining room in a house is a fàntīng.

Frame 3

(It's time for Mr. Martin to go to the RR station)

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 8 | DC: Nǐde chē lái le, xīngli yě dōu fàng hǎo le. Xīwàng yǐhòu zài lái. Yílùpíngān. (shaking hands with Mr. Martin.) | Your car is here. The baggage is already loaded (in the car). Hope you will come again. Bon Voyage! |
| 9 | M: Xièxie, zài jiàn. | Thank you. Good-bye. |

Note:

8. Yí lù píng ān, means, literally, "all the way safe and sound."

Frame 4

(at RR station)

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 10 | M: Qù Shànghǎi de dīliùshí-èrcǐ kuàichē wòpǔ duōshǎo qián? | How much is a sleeping berth ticket on the No.62 express train to Shanghai? |
| 11 | TW: Dānchéngpiào háishi lái huípiào? | One way or round trip? |
| 12 | M: Dānchéngpiào. | One way. |
| 13 | TW: Shíwǔkuàiqīmáowǔfēn qián. | Fifteen dollars and seventy-five cents. |
| 14 | M: Zhèr shì yízhāng èrshíkuài de. Wǒ méiyǒu língqián. | Here is a twenty-dollar bill. I don't have small change. |
| 15 | TW: (Taking the \$20 bill) Hǎo, zhǎo nǐ sīkuàiliǎngmáowǔfēn. | Good. Here is four dollars twenty-five cents in change. |
| 16 | M: Dì liùshíèrcǐ kuàichē zài jǐhào yuètái? Jǐdiǎnzhōng kāi? | On which platform is the No.62 express train? What time is it leaving? |

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 17 | TW: Zài sìhào yuètái. Shí-sāndiǎn érshiwūfēn kāi. | On No.4 platform. It leaves at 1325 hours. |
| 18 | M: Fèixīn, fèixīn. | Sorry for bothering. |

Notes:

14. Língqián, "small change": The word líng can be used in the following ways.

- As a zero sign: Wúlíngliùhào (No.506)
- As a plus sign: Yīnián líng sāntiān (One year plus three days)
- As a score sign: líng-bī-líng (no score)
wū-bī-líng (five-nothing)

15. Zhǎo: As it is used in this lesson, it means "to give change." Zhǎo nǐ sìkuài liǎngmáowūfēn means "I am giving you four dollars and twenty-five cents in change."

18. Fèixīn is an expression used when asking a person to do something or giving thanks to a person for something he/she has done.

Frame 5

W: Wáng Mínglǐ
A: Agent
Běiměi: a fictitious airline

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 19 | W: Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, nǐ hòutiān zuò Zhōngguó Mínhángde bānjī huì guó ma? | Mr. Martin, are you going back on a CAAC flight? |
| 20 | M: Búshì, wǒ zuò *Běiměi de bānjī. | No. I am taking North American. |
| 21 | W: Jīpiào yǐjīng yùdìng-hǎole méiyou? | Have you reserved your ticket? |
| 22 | M: Wǒ mǎi de shì láihuí-piào. Líkāi Měiguóde shíhou, jiù yǐjīng bànhǎole. | I bought a round-trip ticket. It was all arranged when I left the United States. |

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 23 | W: Wǒ kàn nǐ jīntiān zuìhǎo gěi tāmen dǎ diànhuà luòshí yíxià: Yàoburán hòutiān nǐ shàng fēijī de shíhou, wànyǐ tāmen méiyǒu gěi nǐ liú zuòwèi, nǐ zěnmē bàn? | I think you'd better phone them for confirmation. Otherwise, when you board the plane the day after tomorrow, what are you going to do if they have not reserved a seat for you? |
| 24 | M: Nǐ shuō de duì, guò yīhuìr wǒ gěi tāmen dǎ yíge diànhuà. | You are right. I'll call them in a little while. |
| 25 | W: Qùnián wǒ zuò Běiměi de fēijī dào Dōngjīng qù. Yàobushi wǒde péngyou quàn wǒ zài shàng fēijī de qián yītiān dǎ diànhuà luòshí, wǒ jiù méiyǒu zuòwèi le. Yuánlái Běiměide shòupiàochū wàngle gěi wǒ liú zuòwèi le. | Last year, I was going to Tokyo by a North American Airliner; had it not been for my friend's advice to call for confirmation the day before the flight, I wouldn't have had a seat. As it turned out, North America forgot to reserve a seat for me. |
| 26 | W: Nǐde bānjī jǐdiǎn qífēi? | What's the departure time of your flight? |
| 27 | M: Shàngwǔ shíyǐdiǎnbàn. | Eleven-thirty in the morning. |
| 28 | W: Nàme nǐ shénme shíhou qù bàn shǒuxù? | When are going to check in? |
| 29 | M: Shídiǎnbàn zuǒyòu. | About ten o'clock. |
| 30 | W: Nǐ nàge bānjī zhífēi Měiguó ma? | Is your flight going directly to America? |
| 31 | M: Búshì. Lùshang děi zài Dōngjīng gēn Ālāsījiā tíng yíxià. | No. It stops in Tokyo and Alaska. |

Notes:

21. Yùdìng means, literally, "book," or "place on order beforehand." Yù is abbreviated from yùxiān, "beforehand" or "in advance." Dìng is the verb "to subscribe" (a newspaper, etc.); "to book" (seats, tickets, etc.).

23. Luòshí means "to ascertain, to make sure," "to carry out", Luò, as it is used this lesson, means to "fall onto," or "rest with" and shí means "solid, reality," or "fact."

29. Zuǒyòu means, literally, "left right": When this term is used as an adverb, it can only be placed in the sentence-final position. For example:

Nàge chéngshì yǒu liǎngwàn
rén zuǒyòu.

That city has about twenty
thousand people.

Frame 6

(Check in at the airport.)

- 32 A: Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, nǐ yǒu
jǐjian xínglǐ yào tuōyùn? Mr. Martin, how many pieces
of luggage do you want to
check?
- 33 M: Zhè liǎngjian dàde tuō-
yùn. Zhèjiān xiǎode wǒ zìjǐ
suǐshēn dài. I'll check these two large
pieces; I'll take the small
ones with me.
- 34 A: Zhè liǎngjian dàde
děi xiān guòbàng. Yàoshi
chāozhòng, jiù yào bǔ
yīdiǎnr yùnfèi. (after
weighing) Bùchāozhòng.
(handing over baggage
checks to Martin) Zhè
liǎngzhāng shì nǐde
xínglǐpiào. The two large pieces have
to be weighed. If they are
overweight, there will be
additional freight charges.
Not over. Here are your
luggage checks.
- 35 A: Nǐ yào kào chuāng(hu)de
zuòwèi hái shì kào guòdào
de zuòwèi? Do you want a window seat
or an aisle seat?
- 36 M: Gěi wǒ kào guòdào de ba,
fāngbiàn yīdiǎnr. Give me an aisle seat. It's
more convenient
- 37 A: Gěi nǐ érshiwūhào C, kào
guòdào. Nǐ kěyǐ zài hòu-
jǐshì zuòzuò. Shíyīdiǎn-
zhōng lǚkè kěyǐ kāishì
shàng fēijī. Tóudēngzuò
de xiān shàng. Jīngjìzuò
de hòu shàng. I'll give you 25C. It's
next to the aisle. Take a
seat in the waiting room.
Passengers can board the
plane at eleven. First-
class passengers board
first, then economy-class
passengers.
- 38 M: Fèixīn. I have put you to much
trouble.

对话

M: Martin
 DC: Desk Clerk
 TW: Ticket Window

Frame 1

1 M: 今天十点半我要结帐。
 我已经把行李收拾好了。
 现在就请服务员把行李
 放在这个门厅里行不行?

I want to check out at ten-thirty today. I have already packed my baggage. Is it OK to ask the attendant to put my baggage in the lobby?

2 DC: 那不太好。你的行李会
 被人拿走的。还是留在
 房间里好一点儿。十点
 钟我叫服务员给你把行
 李搬下来。

That's not good. Your baggage might be taken away by somebody else. It's better to leave it in the room. I will tell the attendant to bring it down at ten o'clock.

3 M: 谢谢。

Thanks

Frame 2

(M and DC are chatting.)

4 DC: 你到了上海就坐飞机回
 国吗?

Are you going back to your country by airplane after you arrive in Shanghai?

5 M: 不是。我还要到南京、
 杭州去看看。

No. I still want to go to Nanjing and Hanzhou to look around.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>6 DC: 你为什么 不坐飞机到上海去呢? 坐火车又慢又不舒服。飞机不但快, 也不太贵。</p> | <p>Why don't you go to Shanghai by plane? The train is slow and also uncomfortable. The plane is not only fast, but also not too expensive.</p> |
| <p>7 M: 我觉得火车比飞机好。虽然慢一点儿, 但是可以在火车上看看风景, 又可以在餐车上吃饭。</p> | <p>I feel that the train is better than the plane. Although it is a bit slower, one can look at the scenery from the train and also can eat in the dining car.</p> |

Frame 3

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>(It's time for Mr. Martin to go to the RR station)</p> | |
| <p>8 DC: 你的车来了, 行李也都放好了。希望你以后再 来。一路平安。</p> | <p>Your car is here. The baggage is already loaded (in the car). Hope you will come again. Bon Voyage!</p> |
| <p>9 M: 谢谢。再见。</p> | <p>Thank you. Good-bye.</p> |

Frame 4

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <p>(at RR station)</p> | |
| <p>10 M: 去上海的第 62 次快车卧铺多少钱?</p> | <p>How much is a sleeping berth ticket on the No.62 express train to Shanghai?</p> |
| <p>11 TW: 单程票还是来回票?</p> | <p>One way or round trip?</p> |

- | | | |
|----|-------------------------|--|
| 12 | M: 单程票。 | One way. |
| 13 | TW: 十五块七毛五分钱 | Fifteen dollars and seventy-five cents. |
| 14 | M: 这儿是一张二十块的。
我没有零钱。 | Here is a twenty-dollar bill. I don't have small change. |
| 15 | TW: 好, 找你四块两毛五分。 | Good. Here is four dollars twenty-five cents in change. |
| 16 | M: 第 62 次快车在几号月台? 几点钟开? | On which platform is the No.62 express train? What time is it leaving? |
| 17 | TW: 在四号月台。十三点二十五分开。 | On No.4 platform. It leaves at 1325 hours. |
| 18 | M: 费心, 费心。 | Sorry for bothering. |

Frame 5

W: Wáng Mínglǐ
A: Agent
Běiměi: a fictitious airline

- | | | |
|----|--------------------------|--|
| 19 | W: 马丁先生, 你后天坐中国民航的班机回国吗? | Mr. Martin, are you going back on a CAAC flight? |
| 20 | M: 不是。我坐北美的班机。 | No. I am taking North American. |
| 21 | W: 机票已经预订好了没有? | Have you reserved your ticket? |

- 22 M: 我买的是来回票。离开美国的时候就已经办好了。
I bought a round-trip ticket. It was all arranged when I left the United States.
- 23 W: 我看你今天最好给他们打电话落实一下;要不然后天你上飞机的时候万一他们没给你留座位,你怎么办?
I think you'd better phone them for confirmation. Otherwise, when you board the plane the day after tomorrow, what are you going to do if they have not reserved a seat for you?
- 24 M: 你说得对。过一会儿我给他们打一个电话。
You are right. I'll call them in a little while.
- 25 W: 去年我坐北美的飞机到东京去,要不是我的朋友劝我在上飞机的前一天打电话落实,我就没有座位了。原来北美的售票处忘了给我留座位了。
Last year, I was going to Tokyo by a North American Airliner; had it not been for my friend's advice to call for confirmation the day before the flight, I would not have had a seat. As it turned out, North American forgot to reserve a seat for me.
- 26 W: 你的班机几点起飞?
What's the departure time of your flight?
- 27 M: 上午十一点半。
Eleven-thirty in the morning.
- 28 W: 那么你什么时候去办手续?
When are going to check in?
- 29 M: 十点半左右。
About ten o'clock.
- 30 W: 你那个班机直飞美国吗?
Is your flight going directly to America?

- 31 M: 不是。路上得在东京跟阿拉斯加停一下。 No. It stops in Tokyo and Alaska.

Frame 6

(Check in at the airport.)

- 32 A: 马丁先生，你有几件行李要托运？ Mr. Martin, how many pieces of luggage do you want to check?
- 33 M: 这两件大的托运；这件小的我自己随身带。 I'll check these two large pieces; I'll take the small ones with me.
- 34 A: 这两件大的得过磅。要是超重，就要补一点儿运费。不超重。这两张是你的行李票。 The two large pieces have to be weighed. If they are overweight, there will be additional freight charges. Not over. Here are your luggage checks.
- 35 A: 你要靠窗(户)的座位还是靠过道的座位？ Do you want a window seat or an aisle seat?
- 36 M: 给我靠过道的吧。方便一点儿。 Give me an aisle seat. It's more convenient.
- 37 A: 给你 25 号 C。靠过道。你可以先在候机室坐坐。十一点钟旅客可以开始上飞机。头等坐的先上，经济坐的后上。 I'll give you 25C. It's next to the aisle. Take a seat in the waiting room. Passengers can board the plane at eleven. First-class passengers board first, and then economy-class passengers.
- 38 M: 费心。 I have put you to much trouble.

SUMMARY



Frame 1

The CV, bèi is used to express the passive. It is used in the pattern N bèi N VP. Note also that as in the bǎ pattern, the verb in the bèi pattern must have a complement, but it may be a process verb or a verb of condition.

Tāde xínglǐpiào bèi biéren nǎzǒule. His baggage ticket was taken away by another person.

Tā bèi liǎngge rén dǎsǐle. He was beaten to death by two men.

Some times the CV ràng or jiào are used in like circumstances.

Tāde xínglǐ ràng biéren nǎzǒule. His baggage was taken away by another person.

But only bèi can be used when the agent (person doing the action) is dropped.

Wǒ bèi qiǎngle. I was robbed.

Frame 2

The double adverb yòu...yòu "both...and..." can be followed by a single stative verb or a complex verb phrase.

Jīntiān yòu rè yòu shūfu. Today is both hot and comfortable.

Frame 4

The number líng can be used many ways.

- as a zero in a string of numbers:

wǔlíngliùhào No.506

wǔbáilingliù 506

-as a plus sign:

yínián líng sāntiān one year plus three days

-as a score sign:

wǔ-bī-líng

5 to nothing

Frame 5

When zuǒyòu is used to indicate "about," it can only be placed after the number-measure phrase.

DRILLS I



A. Restructure

Reorganize each sentence into one using the CV bèi.

(T) Yǒurén bǎ wǒde táng chīle. (Somebody ate my candy.)	(S) Wǒde táng <u>bèi</u> rén chīle. (My candy was eaten by somebody.)
--	--

Note: After bèi, use only rén instead of yǒurén.

1. Yǒurén bǎ wǒde láihuǐpiào náqūle.
2. Yǒu yíge wàiguó lǚkè bǎ wǒde xíngli náqūle, yīnwei tāde gēn wǒde yíyàng.
3. Rìběn lǚkè bǎ zhèbān huǒchēde wòpǔ dōu dǐngle.
4. Huíguóde xuésheng bǎ jīngjìzuòde fēijīpiào dōu mǎiqūle.
5. Dēng chēde lǚkè bǎ hòuchēshìli de zuòwei dōu zuò mǎn le.
6. Língshìguǎnde rén bǎ tāde hùzhào nǎzǒule.
7. Bié bǎ xíngli fàngzài guòdào; kǒngpà huì yǒurén nǎzǒu.
8. Fúwùtái nàr de nàge shìwùyuán bǎ wǒde míngzi xiě cuò le.
9. Tā bǎ wǒ yào shuō de huà dōu shuō le.
10. Háizimen bǎ nǐ péngyou sònggěi nǐde qiǎokèlītáng dōu chīwánle.

B. Completion

Fill each blank with a suitable word chosen from the following:

liú bǎn bàn shōushi tíng quàn

1. Tā bǎ tāde xíngli cóng lóushang _____ xiàlai le.

2. Xiǎo Lǐ de fùmǔ míngtiān lái kàn tā, suóyì tā bǎ tāde fángjian _____ hǎo le

3. Zhèjian shìqing tài máfan; kǒngpà wǒ _____ bùhǎo.

4. Tā bǎ tāde qìchē _____ zài hòuchēshì dāmén wàibiān le, kěshi nàli bùnéng _____ chē a!

5. Wáng Xiānsheng gēn Wáng Tàitai shàngcǐ qù lǚxíng, bǎ tāmende liǎnngē hái zi dōu _____ zài jiāli le.

6. Tā dào le fēijīchǎng cái xiǎngqǐlai tā bǎ fēijīpiào _____ zài sùshèli le.

7. Tā míngtiān yào qù lǚxíng. Xiànzài tā zài fángjianli _____ xíngli ne.

8. Wǒ yuánlai xiǎng zuò fēijī qù; tā _____ wǒ zuò chuán qù.

9. Tā bùxiǎng shàngxué le; búguò tā fùmǔ _____ tā jìxù shàngxué.

10. Zhème dà de zhuōzi, wǒ zìjǐ _____ búshàngqu.

C. Restructure

Reorganize each sentence by using either dànshi or yòu... yòu... whichever is suitable. Sometimes you'll have to omit one or two words in the restructuring.

(T) Zhèjiàn xíngli hěn dà, yě hěn zhòng (heavy).

(This piece of luggage is very large and also very heavy.)

(T) Zhèjiàn xíngli hěn dà, búzhòng.

(This piece of luggage is very large, not heavy.)

(S) Zhèjiàn xíngli yòu dà yòu zhòng.

(This piece of baggage is both large and heavy.)

(Note: After yòu, the adverb hěn is omitted.)

(S) Zhèjiàn xíngli hěn dà, dànshi búzhòng.

(This piece of luggage is very large, but not heavy.)

1. Fēijīli de jīngjìzuò piányi yìdiǎnr, bú dà shūfu.

2. Fēijīli de tóudēngzuò shūfu, guì yìdiǎnr.

3. Mǎi láihuǐpiào piányi, hěn fāngbiàn.
4. Kào guòdào de zuòwèi fāngbiàn, búdà shūfu.
5. Kào chuāngde zuòwèi shūfu, bùfāngbiàn.
6. Nàge huǒchēzhānde hòuchēshì hěn dà, hěn liàng.
7. Zhèige huǒchēzhānde hòuchēshì hěn xiǎo, hěn hēi.
8. Nàge fēijīchāngde hòujīshì hěn dà, búdà liàng.
9. Cānchēli de fàn hǎochī, piányi.
10. Zhège shǒutíxiāng bùhǎokàn, yě bùhǎoná.

D. Restructure

Reorganize each sentence by using either dànshi or yòu... whichever is suitable.

Note: When the combination yòu...yòu.. is used in a sentence with two subjects, each yòu is placed after its corresponding subject.

(T) Nàge yuètàishang rén hěn duō, shēngyīn hǎn dà.
(two subjects)

(S) Nàge yuètàishang rén yòu duō, shēngyīn yòu dà.
(Each yòu follows its subject. Again the adverb hěn is omitted after yòu.)

In the following sentences don't change the parts in the parentheses; they are put there to help set the situation.

1. Cānchēli, fàn hěn hǎochī, zuòwèi hěn shūfu.
2. Nàge dìfang fēngjǐng hěn hǎokàn, lǚguǎn yě piányi.
3. (Tāde xíngli hái méi shǒushihǎo ne.) Tā zhègerén, rén lǎn, xíngli duō.
4. (Wǒ búxiǎng zuò shíwǔlù gōnggòng-qìchē.) Shíwǔlùde rén tài duō, chēzhàn tài yuǎn.

5. (Wǒ zài shòupiàochù dēngle hěn jiǔ.) Mǎi piào de rén hěn duō, shòupiàoyuán màipiàode rén hěn mǎn.

6. Fēijīde tóudēngzuòli, rén shǎo, zuòwèi shūfu.

7. (Wǒ dǎsuàn zuò Běiměide bānjī.) Běi měide bāncì duō, dīng-piào de shǒuxù fāngbiàn.

8. Sānhào yuètáishang xíngli hěn duō, rén buduō.

9. Tóudēngchēli lǚkè buduō, fúwùyuán duō.

10. (Wǒ zuì buxǐhuan qù bàn hùzhào.) Dēng de shíjian cháng, shǒuxù yě hěn máfan.

E. Completion

Fill each blank with a suitable word chosen from the following list:

Yàobúshì, yàobùrán, yuánlái, wànyǐ

(T) Tā _____ xué Zhōngwén,
hòulái gǎile xué Rìwén le.

(S) Tā yuánlái xué Zhōngwén,
hòulái gǎile xué Rìwén le.

1. Xiànzài bàn huíguó shǒuxù hěn fāngbiàn, _____ méiyǒu zhème duō rén huíguó.

2. Shàngcì lǚxíng, _____ nǐ quàn wǒ qù, wǒ jiù búqù le.

3. Wǒ _____ xiǎng báyuè huíguó. Tā quàn wǒ zǎo yìdiǎnr qù, suǒyǐ wǒ xiànzài dǎsuàn liùyuè qù.

4. Nǐ qù lǚxíng, zuìhǎo zǎo yìdiǎnr dīng yíge lǚguǎn; _____ dào le nàr, hěn bùfāngbiàn.

5. Wǒ gěi nàjiā lǚguǎn jìle yí fēng xìn, yǐhòu yòu dǎle yíge diànbào. Wǒ pà _____ xìn dào de tài wǎn, lǚguǎn jiù méiyǒu fángjian le.

6. Zhèjiàn shìqing yǐjīng shìnián le. _____ nǐ shuōqǐlái, wǒ jiù wàngle.

7. Nǐ zhècǐ dào wàiguó qù, zuǐhǎo xiān mǎi lǚxíng zhǐpiào, _____ hěn bùfāngbiàn.
8. Wǒ xiànzài qù bàn huíguó shǒuxù. _____ wǒ liángdiǎnzhōng huíbulái, qǐng nǐ dài biǎo wǒ qù kāihuì, xíng buxíng?
9. Tā _____ xiǎng mǎi yìzhang dānchéngpiào. Nàge shòupiàoyuán gěi tā suànlesuàn, tā mǎile yìzhang láihuìpiào.
10. Hòulai tā yòu xiǎng, _____ tā qùle buhuí lái, zhèzhang láihuìpiào jiù mǎi cuò le.

F. Completion

Fill each blank with a suitable word chosen from those given in the parentheses.

(T) Bié bǎ táng dōu chīle,
gēi wǒ _____ jīkuài.
(tíng, liú)

(S) Bié bǎ táng dōu chīle,
gēi wǒ liú jīkuài.

1. Rúguǒ wǒmen dōu zǒule, bàngōngshì méiyǒu rén yě buxíng. Shéi kěn _____ zài zhèr jiē diànhuà? (tíng, liú)
2. Wǒ méi bǎ qián dōu huāwán; wǒ hái _____ le yìdiǎnr, yīnwèi wǒ pà wànyì yǒu shénme yào jīn de shìqing děi yòng qián. (fàng, liú)
3. Zài chéngli _____ chē shì yíjiàn fēicháng máfan de shìqing. Yǒude dìfāng bunéng _____; yǒude dìfāng zhǐ néng _____ jīfēnzhōng. (tíng, liú)
4. Tā lǎo pà zìjǐ chāozhòng; suǒyì tā zǎoshang yě _____, wǎnshang yě _____; yìtiān guò liǎngcì bàng. (guòbàng, tuōyùn)
5. Shàngcǐ tā qù Nánjīng, zài _____ kànjiàn yíge lǎo tóngxué. (lùshang, yílù)
6. Tā zuòde nàbān fēijī _____ dōu méitíng, fēidào Shànghǎi. (lùshang, yílù)
7. Wǒ zuòde nàbān fēijī zài _____ tíngle liǎngcì, yíci zài Dōngjīng, yíci zài Ālāsījīā. (lùshang, yílù)
8. Tā zuòle yìtiān huǒchē, _____ dōu méi shuǐjiào, kànwánle liáng běn shū. (yílù, lùshang)

9. Wǒde xíngli chāozhòngle, suǒyǐ wǒ děi jiāo yìdiǎnr _____.
(xiǎofèi, yùnfèi)

10. Tā zhècì huíguó, dàgài zhù yígeyuè _____.
(zuǒyòu, láihuí)

G. Question-Answer

Answer each question according to the cue, and answer it in a complete sentence.

(T) Nǐ xiànzài zài nǎr ne?
(cue: ticket office/window)

(S) Wǒ zài shòupiàochù (ne).

(T) Nǐ zài nàr zuò shénme ne?
(buying a round trip ticket)

(S) Wǒ zài zhèr mǎi láihuí-
piào.

Tā xiànzài zài nǎr ne?
cue:

Tā zài nàr zuò shénme ne?

1. hallway

moving his baggage

2. railroad station

waiting for a friend

3. hotel lobby

weighing his baggage

4. airport counter

checking in his suitcase

5. airline ticket window

making a seat reservation

6. airline counter

paying for the overweight
baggage

7. baggage counter in a
railroad station

checking in his baggage

8. in the dining car

sipping tea and looking at the
scenery

9. in a window seat in the
dining car

talking with a passenger
sitting next to him

10. platform No.3.

waiting for the next express
train

11. in his berth

sleeping

12. in his aisle seat

looking for his round-trip
ticket

H. Expansion

Expand each sentence by adding the additional information in parentheses to it.

(T) Tā zài cānchēli hēchá.
(in a window seat)

(He is drinking tea in
the dining car.)

(T) Tā zài cānchēli zuòzài
yíge kàochuāng de zuòwèishang
hēchá

(He is drinking tea in a
window seat in the dining
car.)

1. Tā zài fēijīli kàn huàbào. (in an aisle seat)
2. Tā gěi xíngli guòbàng ne. (at the airline service counter)
3. Tā zhǎo tāde dānchéngpiào ne. (in his berth in the express train)
4. Tā dào língshìguǎn qù bàn shǒuxù. (for returning to his country)
5. Tā zài fēijīchǎng xíngli fúwùtái nàr. (to check in his luggage and the fee for the overweight)
6. Tā hěn zhùyì tāde shēntǐ hé jiànkāng. (so he weighs [himself] everyday)
7. Zhè yìbān fēijī yílù bùtíng. (after taking off; flying directly to Beijing)
8. Wǒ gěi hángkōng gōngsī dǎle yíge diànhuà. (to reserve a window seat)
9. Tā huíguó de shíhou, yǒu liǎngge tóngxué sòng tā dào hòujīshì. (and said "safe trip" to him.)
10. Tā gāng mǎile yìzhang láihuípiào. (at the ticket window; a round-trip ticket to Shanghai)

I. Expansion

Expand each sentence by adding to it the additional information in parentheses to it.

1. Tā jīhuà xiàgēyuè qù kàn tā fùmǔ. (returning to his country)

2. Tā yùbèi hěn kuài jiù huílai. (staying there for only a month or so)
3. Wǒ bùzhīdào wǒde xíngli chāozhòng buchāozhòng. (because it hasn't been weighed yet)
4. Zhèbān fēiji qǐfēi yǐhou zhǐfēi Shànghǎi (it won't stop on the way)
5. Tuōyùn xíngli de shǒuxù bumáfan. (but you have to wait for a long while)
6. Wǒmen zài sānhào yuètáishang dēngle yíge zhōngtóu zuǒyou. (because the train was late)
7. Nǐ zuǐhǎo xiān dǎ diànhuà liú yíge zuòwèi. (otherwise it will be very inconvenient)
8. Kào chuāngde zuòwèi hěn shūfu. (but it is not as convenient as an aisle seat)
9. Nǐ děi bāng wǒ bǎ zhèjian dà shǒutíxiāng bāndào lóushàngù. (I won't be able to move it myself)
10. Tóuděngzuò dōu bèi Rìběn lǚkè dīngle. (but we still have economy class)

J. Correction

Some of the underlined elements in the following sentences are incorrect, or partially so, and some are all right. Correct the errors.

(T) Wǒde xíngli méiguòzhòng, suóyì wǒ děi jiāo yìdiǎnr yùnfèi.

(S) Wǒde xíngli guòzhòngle, suóyì wǒ děi jiāo yìdiǎnr yùnfèi.

(T) Wǒ bèi wǒde xíngli jiāo yùn le

(S) Wǒ bǎ wǒde xíngli jiāo-yùn le

1. Nǐ yào mǎi dānchéngpiào ne, háishì yào mǎi huflaipiào?
2. Bié bǎ xíngli fànzài guòdào li, kǒngpà huì bèi yǒurén nǎzǒu.
3. Tā juéde zuò huǒchē yòu hěn màn, yòu hěn bushūfu.

4. Zhège shǒutíxiāng tài dà le; wǒ zìjǐ bubāndòng.
5. Shōushi xíngli bǐ shōushi fángjian yiyàng máfan.
6. Kàochuāngde zuòwèi gēn kào guòdào de zuòwèi yiyàng shūfu.
7. Fēijīchǎngde hòujīshì bǐ huǒchēzhànde hòuchēshì xin.
8. Wǒpǔ dōu bǎ Riběn lǔkè mǎiqūle.
9. Nǐde xíngli zhème dà, yídìng děi tuōyùn, yàobushi nǐ méi fázi nǎshàng fēijī qù.
10. Qǐng nǐmen bié bǎ diǎnxīn dōu nǎzǒu, gěi wǒ liú yidiǎnr.

DRILLS II



A. Say that you are going to do something tonight and that someone else will do something else.

Ex: Jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ yào qù Dōnghǎilóu qù diǎn/jiào yìwǎn tāng hé sīge cài chí. Wǒde péngyou Xiǎo Zhāng yào qù túshūguǎn kàn bàoshang xīnwén qù.

B. State what you or someone else is presently doing.

EX: Wǒ tàitai zài zuò xīcān ne. Yīnwei jīntiān wǎnshang tā yào qīngkè¹.

C. Ask one of your classmates if he/she will give something to this or that person.

EX: Jīntiān wǎnshang dàjiā qù chíwǎnfànde fànqián shì jiāogěi lǎoshī, háishi jiāogěi bānzhǎng?

D. Say that you planned to do something a few days ago, but for some reason, you haven't done it yet.

EX: Dàqiántiān wǒ yào qù jiàn Xiàozhǎng, kěshi yīnwei wǒ bìngle, suóyì wǒ hái méi qù jiàn tā ne.

E. Make a specific statement about something that has a special interest or meaning to you.

EX: a. Gēn wǒ cháng zài jiēshang zǒulù¹de nàwei shì wǒde àiren.

b. Hòutiān nàge yào dài wǒ qù cānguān diànrì zhǎnlǎnhuì de rén jiù shì wǒde bānzhǎng.

F. Make a statement that will contain two reasons, one primary and the other secondary, but link them together to show their relationship.

EX: Wǒ shì lái wán(r)² de, bùzhǐshi lái cānguān de.

-
1. gīngkè VO: give a party (lit. invite guests)
 2. wán(r) V: play, have fun

G. Tell your classmates which TV programs you like to watch and how often you watch them. Also, tell them why.

EX: Wǒ zuì xǐhuan dìjiǔ tái. Wǒ tiāntian tīng chàbuduō wǔge zhōngtóu de guǎngbō. Tāmende xīnwén bàogào búdàn duō, yě hěn xiángxì¹. Tāmende guǎngbōyuán jiǎnghuà jiǎngde búmàn yě búkuài. Tāmende xiǎoxi bùzhǐshi cóng yīliǎng ge xīnwénshè lái, shì cóng qībāge xīnwénshè lái.

H. Explain to your teacher the difference, if there is any, between the terms gānggāng and gāngcái.

I. Respond to one of the following questions:

1. Yàoshi nǐ, zǎoshang lái le, lǎoshī wèn nǐ: "Éi, nǐ yīnggāi bādiǎn yīqián jiù lái a. Zěnme nǐ xiànzài cái zǒujìn lái?"

2. Yàoshi nǐ zǎoshang lái zǎole, lǎoshī wèn nǐ: "Éi, zěnme nǐ xiànzài jiù lái? Xiànzài cái qīdiǎn bàn a."

J. Respond to one of the following questions:

1. How many times a day do you take things out of your pockets, kǒudài, purse/wallet, qiánbāo, and then put them back again?

2. How many times a day do you walk into this room, and how many times a day do you walk out of it?

3. How many times a day do you come up the staircase, and how many times a day do you go down?

4. Have you ever failed to locate a word in a Chinese dictionary?

K. Tell you teacher what personal property you have which your friends/relatives like to borrow.

1. xiángxì SV: be detailed, minute

L. Tell your teacher the best way to exercise your hands and feet.

M. Indicate to your teacher the distance between two points (town, city, state, country, etc.) that you know pretty well.

EX: Méngtèlì/Méngchéng (Monterey) lí Shènghéxī (San Jose) bútai yuǎn. Zhīyou 60 duō (yīng)lǐ.

X lí Y	[hěn jìn/hěn yuǎn jīnde hěn/yuǎnde hěn jīnde lihai/yuǎnde lihai fēicháng jìn/fēicháng yuǎn zhēn jìn/zhēn yuǎn jīnjīle/yuǎnjīle tài jīnle/tài yuǎnle bùhěn jìn/bùhěn yuǎn bútai jìn/bútai yuǎn etc./etc.]	. Dàgài yǒu _____ (yīng)lǐ.
--------	---	---	---	--------------------------------

N. Compare distances between two points and a common third point to your classmates.

EX: Nǐde gōngyù (lí zhège xuéyuàn) bǐ wǒde gōngyù lí zhège xuéyuàn yuǎn yidiǎnr.

X lí Y bǐ Z lí Y	[jìn/yuǎn jīnde duō/yuǎnde duō jìn yidiǎnr/yuǎn yidiǎnr jīnduōle/yuǎnduōle etc./etc.]
------------------	---	---	---

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

Activity 1

Role Playing

With a classmate, role play a tourist asking a police officer for directions, using the towns below for reference. Then switch roles.

1. Monterey
2. Pacific Grove
3. Carmel
4. Del Rey Oaks
5. Sand City
6. Seaside
7. Salinas
8. Marina

Activity 2

Discussion

Answers the following questions, and then discuss the topic with the class:

Are employees in the U.S. consulates overseas generally very helpful? What do they do, anyway?

Activity 3

Oral Report

Tell your classmates about a recent experience in the snack bar concerning the food, service, or anything interesting.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

Translation Exercise I - Chinese to English

(Chinese student Xiǎo Sùng and American student Charles are classmates in a California college.)

1. Ch. Xiǎo Sùng, nǐ zhèngzài shōushi xínglǐ ne. Nǐ huíguó de shǒuxù dōu bànhǎole ma?
2. S. Gāng bànhǎo. Wǒ gāng bǎ hùzhào cóng língshìguǎn náhuílai.
3. Ch. Mǎile fēijǐpiào le méiyóu?
4. S. Hái méimǎi ne. Jīntiān xiàwǔ wǒ qù mǎi.
5. Ch. Nǐ yùbei zuò nǎ yíge hángkōng gōngsī de fēijǐ?
6. S. Wǒ xiǎng zuò Běiměi de. Tāmende bāncǐ duō.
7. Ch. Běiměide fēijǐ zài lùshang tíngbutíng?
8. S. Yǒude yílù bùtíng, zhífēi Xiānggǎng. Yǒude zài Xiàwēiyí (Hawaii) tíng yíxià.
9. Ch. Nǐ dǎsuàn zuò zhífēi Xiānggǎng de ma?
10. S. Wǒ dǎsuàn qù de shíhou zuò zhífēi de, huílai de shíhou zài Xiàwēiyí tíngyítíng, xiàqu zhù liǎngtiān.
11. Ch. Nǐ yào mǎi dānchéngpiào ne, háishi láihuǐpiào?
12. S. Mǎi láihuǐpiào. Láihuǐpiào fāngbiàn de duō.
13. Ch. Nǐ zhècǐ huíqu yùbei zhù duō jiǔ?
14. S. Dàgài yígeyuè zuǒyòu. Wǒ děi zài kāixué yīqián huílai.
15. Ch. Nǐ zhǐ zhù yígeyuè zuǒyòu, wèishénme yào dài zhème duō xínglǐ ne?
16. S. Zhège shǒutíxiānglǐ dōu shì sòng rén de dōngxi. Wǒ jiāli rén duō.
17. Ch. Nàme nǐ huílai de shíhou xínglǐ jiù shǎo duo le.

18. S. Bùyídìng. Huílai de shíhou tāmen yòu yào sònggěi wǒ hěn duō dōngxi.

19. Ch. Nǐ zhèxiē xínglǐ kǒngpà huì chāozhòng ba.

20. S. Yídìng huì chāozhòng. Wǒ yùbei tuōyùn, jiāo yìdiǎnr yùnfèi.

21. Wǒman sùshè lóuxià yǒu yíge bàngchèng (scale). Nǐ shòushihǎole yíhòu, kéyǐ xiān nǎqu chènghyìcheng (weigh), kànkan chāozhòng duōshao.

22. S. Wǒ kàn búbì le. Zhème zhòng (heavy) de xínglǐ, bān-xiàqu, bānshànglai, tài máfan le.

Translation Exercise 2 - English to Chinese

(continued from Exercise 1)

23. Ch. Where are you going to buy your airplane ticket, from an airline company or an agency?

24. S. I'll go to the airline company.

25. Ch. Are you going to sit in the economy section or the first-class section?

26. S. What (kind of) a question is this? You know how much money I have. Can I afford a first-class ticket?

27. Ch. I think so. I like a window seat. It is not so convenient as an aisle seat, but it is more comfortable.

28. Ch. After the airplane ride, you have to transfer to a train. Is that right?

29. S. That's right. I have to ride a train for another ten hours or so.

30. Ch. How long will you wait in between the two rides?

31. S. As I remember, it's about five hours, but I'll have to make sure later when I get to the travel agency.

32. Ch. What are you going to do for that five hours?

33. S. Probably I'll go to visit an old classmate of mine; otherwise I'll just stay in the waiting room at the railroad station.

34. Ch. Five hours will be a long time for you to stay either in the airport or the railroad station.

35. S. Never mind. Maybe I'll meet some interesting travelers on the way or in the station's waiting room.

36. Ch. That's possible. Can you buy your train ticket here in advance?

37. S. I have to ask a Chinese travel agency first. However, I think I can make a reservation in advance.

38. Ch. Do you need a berth for the train ride?

39. S. I don't think so. It's only ten hours or so. I would like to sit in a window seat to look at the scenery.

40. Ch. You must know that railroad line and the places on the way very well.

41. S. Yes, I do. I rode that train very often when I went to high school away from my hometown.

42. Ch. Do you think things may have changed somewhat?

43. S. I hope not. I used to like the food in the dining car very much.

44. Ch. Listening to what you have said, I really wish I could go with you.

LESSON 28

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- Uses of láidejī and láibuji.
- Use of yuán, "dollar" and jiǎo, "dime."
- Use of chāozhòng, "overweight".

邮递员

Yóudìyuán



OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- Ask and answer questions about postal expenses and postal delivery.
- Ask about different types of mail (including insured mail).
- Ask and answer questions about overweight mail.
- Ask and answer questions about having time to do something.
- Ask for a receipt.

GLOSSARY



1. bāngzhù	帮助	V/N: to help/assistance
2. báo	薄	SV: be thin, be light (wine)
3. bàoguān	报关	VO: making a customs declaration
bàoguānbiǎo	报关表	N: customs declaration form
4. bāoguǒ	包裹	N: parcel, parcel post (M: -jiàn 件, -ge 个)
bāo/guǒ	包/裹	V: to wrap
5. bǎojià (bǎoxiǎn)	保价/保险	VO/N: to insure/insurance
6. bìngqiě	并且	MA: moreover
7. chuāngkǒu(r)	窗口(儿)	N: window, ticket window
8. dānzi	单子	N: list, form
9. fù	付	V: to pay
10. guàhào	挂号	V/N: to register/registration
11. hǎiguān	海关	N: customs, custom house
12. hòu	厚	SV: thick, rich or strong (wine)
13. huāpíng	花瓶	N: flower vase
14. huítiao	回条	N: receipt
15. jìrán	既然	MA: since, now that
16. jiàokēshū	教科书	N: textbook
17. láidejí	来得及	RV: There is enough time
18. pǎo	跑	V: to run, to run away
19. Sānfānshì	三藩市	N: San Francisco
20. shuì	税	N: tax
21. tián	填	V: to fill in
tiánbào	填报	V: to fill in (a form)

22. xīnfēng	信封	N: envelope
23. xìntǒng	信筒	N: mailbox
24. xìnxiāng	信箱	N: mailbox
25. xìnzhǐ	信纸	N: letter paper
26. yóudìyuán	邮递员	N: mailman (PRC)
27. yóuchāi	邮差	N: mailman (Taiwan)
28. yóufèi	邮费	N: postage
29. yóujiǎn	邮简	N: letter sheet (aerogram)
30. yóupiào	邮票	N: stamp
31. yóutǒng	邮筒	N: pillar box, mailbox
32. yóuwùyuán	邮务员	N: clerk in post office
yóuwù	邮务	N: postal service
33. yóuxiāng	邮箱	N: mailbox
34. yóuzhèng-xìnxiāng	邮政信箱	N: post office box
yóuzhèng	邮政	N: postal service
35. zhí	值	SV: be worth (so much), be valuable
zhíqián	值钱	SV/VO: be valuable/ to be worth (so much)

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



Yóuzhèngjú - Post Office

W: Wáng Mínglǐ
J: Jones
C: clerk

Frame 1

1	J: Wángxiānsheng, yóujú lí zhèr yuǎn ma?	Mr. Wang, how far (is it) from here to the post office?
2	W: Bùyǎn. Zǒu shífēnzhōng jiù dào le. Rúguǒ nǐ yào jìxìn búbì qù yóujú. Qiánbiān lùkǒu(r) nàr jiù yǒu yíge yóutǒng.	Not far. It's ten minutes' walk. If you want to mail a letter, you don't have to go to the post office. There is a mailbox right at the next intersection.
3	J: Wǒ děi qù yóujú. Yīnwei wǒ yào jì bāoguǒ, mǎi yóupiào, hái yào jì yīfēng guàhào xìn.	I have to go to the post office because I want to mail parcels, buy stamps, and also mail one registered letter.
4	W: Nàme nǐ děi kuàiyǐdiǎn qù le. Yóujú wǔdiǎn guānmén, xiànzài yījīng sìdiǎnbàn le.	Then you'd better hurry up. The post office closes at five o'clock and it's already four-thirty now.
5	J: Wǒ lìkè jiù qù. (Taking up several parcels)	I'll go right away.
6	W: Zhème duō bāoguǒ nǐ dōu yào náqu ma? Ràng wǒ bāng nǐ ná jǐjiàn ba.	Are you going to carry all these parcels? Let me help you carry a few.
7	J: Xièxie. Máfān nǐ le. wǒmen zǒu ba. (Dashing out)	Thanks for your help. Let's go.
8	W: Nǐ búbì pǎo, hái láidejí.	Don't run. There is enough time.

Notes:

2 Yóutǒng, means, literally "post/mail (a thick, tube-shaped object)." Although yóutǒng, xìntǒng, yóuxiāng and xìnxīang all mean mailbox, yóutǒng/xìntǒng is generally a large container, and yóuxiāng/xìnxīang a small box.

6 Bāng, "to help" You already learned bāng as a verb and bāng-máng as a verb object in Lesson 18. In this Lesson bāngzhù is introduced both as a verb and as a noun. See the following examples:

As a Verb:

Qǐng nǐ bāng/bāngzhù wǒ. Please help me.

As a Verb Object:

Qǐng nǐ bāng wǒde máng. Please help me.

As a Noun:

Xièxie nǐ gěi wǒde bāngzhù. Thank you for the help you have given me.

8 Láidejǐ means "there is enough time (to do something)" and lǎibujǐ means "there is not enough time (to do it)."

Frame 2

On the Way to the Post Office

9	J: Wáng Xiānsheng, zhèli yóudiyuàn měitiān lái jǐcì? Dōu shì shénme shíhou lái?	Mr. Wang, how many times does the postman come here every day? When does he come?
10	W: Yìtiān liǎngcì. Dào wǒmen zhèli chàbuduō shì shàngwǔ shídiǎn, xiàwǔ sāndiǎn.	Twice a day. About ten o'clock in the morning and three o'clock in the afternoon.
11	J: Zài yóujú zǐ yóuzhèng-xīnxiāng de rén duō ma?	Do many people rent post office boxes?
12	W: hěn duō.	There are many.

Frame 3

At the Post Office (1)

13	J: Qǐngwèn, jǐdao Měiguó gùde hángkōngxìn yóufèi duōshǎo qián?	Excuse me, how much postage is needed to send an airmail letter to America?
14	C: Bāmáo.	Eighty cents.

Frame 3 (Continued)

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| 15 | J: Guàhào gēn píngxīn ne? | How about registered mail and ordinary mail? |
| 16 | C: Hángkōng guàhào shì yīkuài liù(máo). Píngxīn shì liùmáo. Búguò píngxīn zǒude hěn màn, yīnwei děi yòng chuán yùn. | Registered airmail is one dollar and sixty cents. Ordinary mail is sixty cents. But ordinary mail is very slow because it is shipped by boat. |
| 17 | J: Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ sānzhāng hángkōng xīn yóupiào. Shízhāng yóujiǎn. Zhèfēng guàhào xīn shì wàng Sānfānshì jīde. Yígòng yào duōshǎo qián? | Please give me three airmail stamps and ten aerograms. And this registered letter is to San Francisco. How much is it altogether? |
| 18 | C: Nǐ yào huítíáo búyào? | Do you want a receipt? |
| 19 | J: yào | Yes. |
| 20 | C: Yígòng shì sīkuài liǎng(máo). | Altogether it's four dollars and twenty cents. |

16 Máo: The measure -máo "dime" was introduced in Lesson 7. In addition to máo, another word for "dime," also used today, is jiǎo. The following are some units of money:

yuán/kuài	dollar
máo/jiǎo	dime
fēn	cent

Frame 4

At the post office (2)

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 21 | J: Zhè jǐge bāoguǒ dōu shì wàng Měiguó jīde, kéyǐ bǎo jià ma? | These parcels are all go to America; can I insure them? |
| 22 | C: Kéyǐ. Nǐ děi xiān bǎ dānzi tián hǎo. Ránhòu dào nàge chuāngkǒu(r) jī. Bié wàngle tiánbào zhí duōshǎo qián. | You can. You have to fill out the form first. Then go to that window. Don't forget to fill in the value. |

Frame 4 (Continued)

23	J: Zhè sānběn dōu shì xiē bù zhíqián de jiù <u>jiàokēshū</u> .	These three are used textbooks, all worth little (monetarily).
24	C: <u>Jírán</u> bù zhí shénme qián, nà jiù búbi bǎojià le. Nàge bāoguǒ ne?	Since they are not worth much, you don't have to insure them. How about that parcel?
25	J: Shì yige <u>huāpíng</u> , zhí yìbǎi duō kuài.	That is a vase. It is worth more than one hundred dollars.
26	C: Nàge děi bǎojià, <u>bìngqiě</u> hái děi tián yìzhang <u>bàoquān biǎo</u> . Bāoguǒ dào le Měiguó yǐhòu, shǒu bāoguǒ de rén yěxū děi <u>fùshuì</u> . <u>Hǎiguān</u> yěxū huì <u>jiǎnchá</u> .	You have to insure it and also have to fill out a customs declaration form. After the parcels arrive in America, the person who receives the parcels may have to pay the tax. The custom house probably will inspect it.
27	J: Mǎfan nǐ kànkàn zhèfēng hángkōng xìn chāozhòng ma?	Please check to see if this airmail letter is overweight.
28	C: (Putting letter on scale) Chāozhòng le. Nǐ yòngde <u>xīnfēng xīnzhǐ</u> dōu tài hòu, yàoshi yòng báode hángkōng xīnfēng xīnzhǐ jiù búhuì chāozhòng le.	It's overweight. The envelope and letter paper are too thick; if you use thin envelope and letter paper, then it won't be overweight.
29	J: Wǒ děi duō fù duōshǎo yóufèi ne?	How much extra do I have to pay?
30	C: Duō fù qí máo.	Seventy cents more.

21 Bǎojià, means, literally, "insure value" and bǎoxiǎn means, literally, "insure against peril/risk." Of these two terms, bǎoxiǎn is more versatile.

24 Jírán, "since," "now that": Although jírán, "since," is translated as an adverb it can only be used to signify "since that's the case," "since it is so."

对话

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | J: 王先生, 邮局离这儿远吗? | Mr. Wang, how far (is it) from here to the post office? |
| 2 | W: 不远, 走十分钟就到了。如果你要寄信不必去邮局。前边路口(儿)那儿就有一个邮筒。 | Not far. It's ten minutes' walk. If you want to mail a letter, you don't have to go to the post office. There is a mailbox right at the next intersection. |
| 3 | J: 我得去邮局。因为我要寄包裹、买邮票, 还要寄一封挂号信。 | I have to go to the post office because I want to mail parcels, buy stamps, and also mail one registered letter. |
| 4 | W: 那么你得快一点儿去了。邮局五点关门, 现在已经四点半了。 | Then you'd better hurry up. The post office closes at five o'clock and it's already four-thirty now. |
| 5 | J: 我立刻就去。 | I'll go right away. |
| 6 | W: 这么多包裹你都要拿去吗? 让我帮你拿几件吧。 | Are you going to carry all these parcels? Let me help you carry a few. |
| 7 | J: 谢谢。麻烦你了。我们走吧。 | Thanks for your help. Let's go. |
| 8 | W: 你不必跑, 还来得及。 | Don't run. There is enough time. |

Frame 2

On the Way to the Post Office

- | | | |
|----|------------------------------|---|
| 9 | J: 王先生, 这里邮递员每天来几次? 都是什么时候来? | Mr. Wang, how many times does the postman come here every day? When does he come? |
| 10 | W: 一天两次。到我们这里差不多是上午十点, 下午三点。 | Twice a day. About ten o'clock in the morning and three o'clock in the afternoon. |

Frame 2 (Continued)

- | | | |
|----|------------------|--|
| 11 | J: 在邮局租邮政信箱的人多吗? | Do many people rent post office boxes? |
| 12 | W: 很多。 | There are many. |

Frame 3

At the Post Office (1)

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| 13 | J: 请问, 寄到美国去的航空信邮费多少钱? | Excuse me, how much postage is needed to send an airmail letter to America? |
| 14 | C: 八毛。 | Eighty cents. |
| 15 | J: 挂号跟平信呢? | How about registered mail and ordinary mail? |
| 16 | C: 航空挂号是一块六(毛)。平信是六毛。不过平信走的很慢, 因为得用船运。 | Registered airmail is one dollar and sixty cents. Ordinary mail is sixty cents. But ordinary mail is very slow because it is shipped by boat. |
| 17 | J: 请你给我三张航空信邮票, 十张邮筒。这封挂号信是往三藩市寄的。一共要多少钱? | Please give me three airmail stamps and ten aerograms. And this registered letter is to San Francisco. How much is it altogether? |
| 18 | C: 你要回条不要? | Do you want a receipt? |
| 19 | J: 要。 | Yes. |
| 20 | C: 一共是四块二(毛)。 | Altogether it's four dollars and twenty cents. |

Frame 4

At the post office (2)

- | | | |
|----|------------------------|--|
| 21 | J: 这几个包裹都是往美国寄的。可以保价吗? | These parcels are all to go to America; can I insure them? |
|----|------------------------|--|

Frame 4 (Continued)

- | | | | |
|----|----|---|--|
| 22 | C: | 可以。你得把单子填好。然后到那个窗口(儿)寄。别忘了填报 值多少钱。 | You can. You have to fill out the form first. Then go to that window. Don't forget to fill in the value. |
| 23 | J: | 这三本都是些不值钱的旧教科书。 | These three are used textbooks, all worth little (monetarily). |
| 24 | C: | 既然不值什么钱, 那就不必保价了。那个包裹呢? | Since they are not worth much, you don't have to insure them. How about that parcel? |
| 25 | J: | 是一个花瓶, 值一百多块。 | That is a vase. It is worth more than one hundred dollars. |
| 26 | C: | 那个得保价, 并且还得上得填一张报关表。包裹到了美国以后, 收包裹的人也许得付税。海关也许会检查。 | You have to insure it and also have to fill out a customs declaration form. After the parcels arrive in America, the person who receives the parcels may have to pay the tax. The custom house probably will inspect it. |
| 27 | J: | 麻烦你看看这封航空信超重吗? | Please check to see if this airmail letter is overweight. |
| 28 | C: | 超重了。你用的信封、信纸都太厚, 要是用薄的航空信封、信纸就不会超重了。 | It's overweight. The envelope and letter paper are too thick; if you use thin envelope and letter paper, then it won't be overweight. |
| 29 | J: | 我得付多少邮费呢? | How much extra do I have to pay? |
| 30 | C: | 多付七毛。 | Seventy cents more. |

SUMMARY



Frame 1

Láidejí and láibùjí are very useful phrases.

Huǒche hái méidào, hái
láidejí qù dǎge diànhuà
ne.

The train hasn't arrived;
there is still time to make
a phone call.

Zhāogāo! láibujéle, wǒ yòu
bunéng pǎo.

Oh, too bad! There is no
time, and I'm unable to run.

Frame 3

Two measures for money are yuán, "dollar," and jiǎo, "dime."

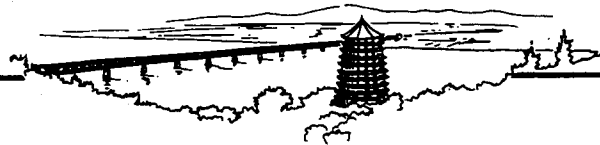
Frame 4

The adverb jìrán, although it is translated as "since," can only be used to indicate "since that's the case".

Nǐ jìrán yǒu qián, nǐ zìjǐ
kéyǐ yòng chūzū qìchē.

Since you have money, you
yourself can use a cab.

DRILLS I



A. Question-Answer. Answer the question according to the cue.

(T) Nǐ kàn nàdòng fángzi zhǐ duōshǎo qián?

(How much do you think that house would be worth?)

cue: a. probably a lot
b. not even \$1000

(S) a. Nàdòng fángzi kǒngpà zhǐ hěn duō qián.

(That house is probably worth a lot of money.)

b. Nàdòng fángzi lián yìqiānuàiqiān yě bùzhǐ.

(That house is not even worth \$1000.)

Nàge huāping zhǐ duōshǎo qián?

1. \$5

2. over \$800

3. \$60 or so

4. not much

5. hardly any value

6. not valuable

7. not even one cent

8. about \$100

9. less than \$30

10. probably around \$200

B. Question-Answer. Answer the question according to the cue.

(T) Nǐ mǎi zìxíngchē huāle duōshǎo qián?

(How much did you spend on the bicycle?)

cue: a. not much
b. hardly any

(S) a. Wǒ mǎi zìxíngchē méihuā duōshǎo qián?

(I didn't spend much on the bicycle.)

b. Wǒ mǎi zìxíngchē méihuā shénme qián.

(I hardly spent any money on the bicycle.)

Tā mǎi nàbù qìchē fùle duōshǎo qián de shuǐ?

1. just a little

2. a lot

3. not much

4. hardly any

5. \$300 or so

6. over \$400 at least

7. less than \$500

8. not even up to \$200

9. \$400 at most

10. probably between \$200 and \$300

C&D. Expansion. Add the additional information to the sentence.

(T) a. Wǒ wàngle fùshuǐ. (\$5)

b. Zhège huāpíng bùzhí-
qián. (not even \$1)

(S) Wǒ wàngle fù wǔkuàiqiándē
shuǐ.

Zhège huāpíng lián yíkuài-
qián yě bùzhí.

1. Bié wàngle tiánbiǎo.

- a. (two sheets of a registration form)
- b. (two kinds of insurance form)
- c. (three sheets of a customs form)
- d. (two kinds of tax-paying form)

2. Wǒ yào mǎi yóupiào.

- a. (four-dollars')
- b. (\$3 airmail)
- c. (\$5 worth of 20-cent stamps)
- d. (\$2 worth of 10-cent stamps)

3. Wǒ yào jìxìn.

- a. (two airmail letters)
- b. (one registered airmail and one ordinary airmail)
- c. (three surface-mail letters)
- d. (two registered letters and one aerogram)

4. Zuótiān tā lái bāngmáng. (Note: bāngmáng is a VO compound; objects and adverb phrases can be inserted between bāng and máng.)

- a. (for a whole day yìzhěngtiān)
- b. (us)
- c. (very much)
- d. (not much)

5. Zhècǐde jīngyàn duì wǒmen yǒu bāngzhù. (Note: bāngzhù is a N or a V, but not a VO.)

- a. (very much)
- b. (not much)
- c. (not at all)
- d. (not even a bit)

E. Pairing. Fill in each blank with the appropriate word.

(T) 1. Fēijīchǎng yǒu _____. 2. Huǒchēzhàn yǒu _____. given words: a. hòuchēshì b. hòujīshì	(S) 1. Fēijīchǎng yǒu <u>hòujīshì</u> . 2. Huǒchēzhàn yǒu <u>hòuchēshì</u> .
--	---

Questions

1. Jìxīn huòshì jǐ bāoguǒ yào fù _____.
2. Tuōyùn xínglì yào fù _____.
3. Lǚguǎnlǐde fúwùyuán gěi nǐ ná xínglì, nǐ yào gěi tā _____.
4. Yǒubǐngde rén qù kàn yīsheng, chīyào, yào fù _____.
5. Shàngxué yào fù _____.
6. Chūqù lǚxíng yào huā _____.
7. Jiālǐ yòng diàndēng hé diànrì, měigeyuè yào fù _____.
8. Jiālǐ yòng shuǐ xī yīfu, xī zǎo, měigeyuè yào fù _____.
9. Wǒmen dǎ diànhuà, měigeyuè yào fù _____.
10. Wǒmen shēnghuólǐ bìděi yòngde qián (chí, zhù fángzi, zuòchē, déngdēng) jiù jiào _____.

Given Words

- a. yīyàofèi
- b. shuǐfèi
- c. xuéfèi
- d. lǚfèi
- e. yùnfèi
- e. yóufèi
- f. diànhuàfèi
- g. diànfèi
- h. xiǎofèi
- i. shēnghuófèi

F. Pairing. Fill in each blank with the appropriate word.

- | <u>Questions</u> | <u>Given Words</u> |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. Wǒ búdào yóujúù qù jìxìn, yīnwèi wǒjiā fùjìn yǒu hěn duō _____ | a. yóupiào |
| 2. Tā shōují (collect) _____; tā yǒu yìbǎinián yìqiánde _____, hěn zhíqián. | b. yóuzhèng xīnxiāng |
| 3. Tā zài yóujúùli zúle yíge _____, suǒyǐ tā měitiān zhōngwǔ dào yóujúù qù nà xìn. | c. yóutǒng |
| 4. Tā jìdào Měiguode nàge bāoguǒ chāozhōng le, suǒyǐ tā fùle hěn duō _____. | d. yóufèi |
| 5. Wǒ gěi zài wàiguóde péngyou xiěxìn, dōu yòng _____. Zhèyàng jiù búbì hángkōng xīnzhǐ hé xīnfēng le. | e. yóujiǎn |
| 6. _____ měitiān zài shàngwǔ shíyīdiǎn zuǒyòu sòngxìn sòngdào wǒmen jiā lái. | f. yóudìyuán |
| 7. Wǒde xiǎo háizi, měitiān shíyīdiǎn zài wǒjiā dàmén qiánbiānr _____ nàr dēng yóudìyuán. | g. xīnxiāng |
| 8. Wǒ gāngcái dào yóujúù qù, kànjian Xiǎo Lǐ zài yóujúù fúwùtái lǐbiānr gōngzuò. Tā xiànzài shì nàrde _____. | h. yóuwùyuán |
| 9. Búshì suǒyǒude guàhàoxìn dōu yǒu _____. Rúguǒ nǐ yào _____, nǐ děi gào song yóuwùyuán. | i. bāoguǒ |
| 10. Nǐ zhège _____ zhème dà, kǒngpà yóujúù bùgěi nǐ jù. Nǐ wèishénme bù bǎ tā bāochéng (wrap into) liǎngge _____ ne? | j. huítiao |

G. Combine each pair of sentences into one by using either of the conjunctions jìrán, bìngqiě.

(T) a. Zhège bāoguǒ bùzhé shénme qián. zhège bāoguǒ búbì bǎojià.
b. Wǒ yào dào yóujúù qù jì bāoguǒ. Wǒ yě yào dào yóujúù qù zū yíge yóuzhèng

(S) a. Zhège bāoguǒ jìrán bùzhé shénme qián, jiù búbì bǎojià le.
(S) b. Wǒ yào dào yóujúù qù jì bāoguǒ, bìngqiě yào zū yíge yóuzhèng xīnxiāng.

1. Yòng hángkōng yóujiǎn piányi yìdiǎnr.
Yòng hángkōng yóujiǎn búbì mǎi xīnzhǐ hé xīnfēng.
2. Nǐ bùxǐhuan zhège huāpíng.
Nǐ wèishénme yào bǎ zhège huāpíng dàihuíqu?
3. Wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhège huāpíng dàihuíqu, yīnwei hzè shì wǒ tàitai mǎide.
Wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhège huapíng dàihuíqu, yīnwei wǒde xínglǐ bù chāozhòng.
4. Nǐ jǐgěi nǐ tàitai de xīn chángchang chāozhòng.
Nǐ wèishénme búyòng hángkōng xīnzhǐ ne?
5. Wǒ bùxǐhuan yòng nàme báode zhǐ xiěxìn.
Wǒde xīn chāozhòng le, yě zhǐ fù jīmáoqiánde yóufèi.
6. Zhèxiē jiàokēshū dōu hěn jiùle.
Nǐ huíguóde shíhou zěrme bǎ zhèxiē jiù jiàokēshū dōu dàihuí-lai le?
7. Zhèxiē jiù shū dōu shì hěn yǒumingde rén xiěde.
Zhèxiē jiù shū yě shì wǒ shēnghuóde yībùfen (part).
8. Zhège bāoguǒ bùzhǐ duōshǎo qián.
Nǐ wèishénme yào gěi zhège bùzhǐqiánde bāoguǒ bǎojià ne?
9. Zhège bāoguǒlǐde dōngxī duì wǒ hěn zhòngyào (important).
Zhè lǐbiānde dōngxī shì huā duōshǎo qián yě mǎi búdàode.
10. Wǒmen yǐjīng huì yòng zhèliǎngge shēngzì le.
Wǒmen búbì zài liànxi zhèliǎngge shēngzì le.

H. Reorganization. Reorganize the sentences by comparing the two things in another way while keeping the meaning unchanged.

(T) bàozhǐ bǐ shū piányi.

(S) Bàozhǐ méiyóu shū nàme guì.
or Shū bǐ bàozhǐ guì.
or Shū méiyóu bàozhǐ nàme piányi.

1. Pǎo bǐ zǒu kuài.
2. Zìdiǎn bǐ jiàokēshū hòu.
3. Hángkōng xīnzhǐ bǐ pǔtōngde zhǐ báo.
4. Píngxīnde yóufèi bǐ hángkōngde yóufèi shǎo.
5. Zhège dà bāoguǒ bǐ nàge xiǎo bāoguǒ zhòng (heavy).

6. Zhèběn jiàokēshū bǐ nàběn zidiǎn qīng (light).
7. Wǒmende jiàoshì bǐ nǐmende jiàoshì liàng.
8. Wǒ jiā lí yóujú bǐ lí yóutóng yuǎn.
9. Wǒmen jiāli měige yuè diànfèi (electricity expense) bǐ shuǐfèi (water expense) duō.
10. Wǒmen jiāli měige yuè diànhuàfèi (telephone expense) bǐ diànfèi duō.

I. Expansion. Expand each of the sentences in Drill H by adding the corresponding information given in the following list.

(T) Zhège xīnfēng bǐ nàge xīnfēng báo.
much more

(S) Zhège xīnfēng bǐ nàge xīnfēng báode duō.

1. much more

6. one pound

2. a little

7. much more

3. a little

8. one mile

4. 20 cents

9. \$30 or so

5. two pounds (liǎng bàng)

10. over \$40

J. Correction. The underlined elements of the following sentences may be incorrect. Correct the incorrect ones.

(T) Nǐ suǐrán bùxǐhuan nàge rén, nǐ jiù búbì gēn tā shuōhuà le.

(Although you don't like that man, you don't have to talk to him.)

(S) Nǐ jìrán bù xǐhuan nàge rén, nǐ jiù búbì gēn tā shuōhuà le.

(As you don't like that man, you don't have to talk to him.)

1. Zidiǎn bǐ pǔtōngde jiàokēshū báo.

2. Hángkōng xīnzhī bǐ jiàokēshūde zhī hòu.

3. Nǐ jì zhème búzhíqiánde dōngxì, yīnggāi bǎojià.

4. Tā bāngle wǒ hěn duō zhù.

5. Zhècìde shíxí jīngyàn duì wǒmen dàjiā yǒu hěn duō bānqǎng.
6. Zhèjiàn shìqing wǒ zìjǐ kényì zuò, bùxūyào nǐmen bāng wǒ.
7. Tā qù nà bāoguǒ, fùshuǐ le sānkuàiqián.
8. Zhège huāpíng zhíqián wǔkuàibàn.
9. Nǐ suǐrán lèi le, wèishénme hái yào qù pǎo ne?
10. Nǐ suǐrán bùxǐhuan zhège huāpíng, nǐ wèishénme hái bǎ tā mǎilai ne?

DRILLS II



A. State fondness/love for (1) someone (2) of doing something.

EX: a. Wǒ zhēn ài wǒde nà liǎngge nǚér¹.
b. Zhōumòde shíhou wǒ hěn xǐhuan zìjǐ yíge rén dào yízuò²
hěn yǒumíngde shānshang qù zǒuzou.

1. nǚér N: daughter
2. zuò M: for mountain, bridge, statue, etc.

B. State the idea that there are many/quite a few people here who have the ability/capacity to do something.

EX: a. Zhèli yǒu hěn duōde rén néng xiě shípǔ.
b. Zhèli yǒu bùshǎode xiǎojie hé tàitai néng zuò yifu/
yīshang.

C. Name a few of your favorite drinks.

EX: Wǒ hěn xǐhuan hē qìshuǐ, píjiǔ hé pútaojiǔ*.

* pútaojiǔ N: grape wine

D. State your change of status.

EX: a. Wǒ búshì lǎobǎixìng¹ le, wǒ shì jūnrén² le.
b. Wǒ shì xiàshì³ le.

1. lǎobǎixìng N: civilian
2. jūnrén N: serviceman
3. xiàshì N: corporal/E-4

E. Distinguish the following idiomatic expressions.

a. Lǎo Wáng/Xiǎo Wáng
b. Wáng Lǎo
c. Lǎo Dà, Lǎo Èr, Lǎo Sān, etc.

F. Select one of the following Co-Verbs and use it in a statement.

a. gěi (for the benefit of)
b. tī (on behalf of)
c. gēn (together with)
d. duì (to, towards)
e. yòng (with, using)

G. Select one of the following question words and use it as an indefinite in a statement.

- a. duōshǎo (much/many)
- b. shénme (any)
- c. jǐge (many)
- d. nǎr (anywhere)
- e. shéi (anyone)

H. Make an inclusive statement (a question word followed by the adverb dōu).

EX: Zhèlide shìqing shéi dōu zhīdao.

I. Make an exclusive statement (a question word followed by the adverb dōu bù).

EX: Zuìjìn wǒ nǎr dōu bù xǐhuan qùle.

J. Make an intensified exclusive statement (lián ... dōu/yě).

EX: Xiànzài wǒ lián yímáo qián dōu/yě méiyǒu.

K. Select one of the following Resultative Verb-Compounds and use it in a statement. You may choose either the potential or the actual situation.

EX:

<u>Potential Pos.</u>	<u>Potential Neg.</u>	<u>Actual Pos.</u>	<u>Actual Neg.</u>
tīng <u>d</u> ejian	tīng <u>b</u> ujian	tīngjian <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> tīngjian
kàn <u>d</u> ejian	kàn <u>b</u> ujian	kànjian <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> kànjian
tīng <u>d</u> edǒng	tīng <u>b</u> udǒng	tīngdǒng <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> tīngdǒng
ná <u>d</u> echūqu	ná <u>b</u> uchūqu	náchūqu <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> náchūqu
mǎi <u>d</u> ezháo	mǎi <u>b</u> uzháo	mǎizháo <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> mǎizháo
chī <u>d</u> ebǎo	chī <u>b</u> ubǎo	chībǎo <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> chībǎo
chī <u>d</u> exiàqu	chī <u>b</u> xixiàqu	chīxixiàqu <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> chīxixiàqu
shàng <u>d</u> elái	shàng <u>b</u> ulái	shànglái <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> shànglái
xià <u>d</u> equ	xià <u>b</u> uqu	xiàqu <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> xiàqu
xiě <u>d</u> exiàlai	xiě <u>b</u> xixiàlai	xiěxixiàlai <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> xiěxixiàlai
shuō <u>d</u> ewán	shuō <u>b</u> uwán	shuōwán <u>le</u>	<u>méi</u> shuōwán

L. Select one of the following Resultative Verb endings and use it in a statement.

- a. -qǐ (appears only in the potential situation)
- b. -dào
- c. -hǎo

M. Describe to your teacher the facial features of the person who is seated next to you.

EX: Tāde liǎn búdàn hěn cháng yě hěn hēi. Tāde bīzi hěn gāo yě hěn hóng.

N. Make a statement to indicate that a certain object or person was affected by the action of the verb. You may use the following linear configuration for reference.

Noun Phrase¹ + bèi + Noun Phrase² + Verb Phrase
(Np¹ + bèi + NP² + VP)

EX: a. Tāde háizi bèi wǒ dǎle yíxià.
b. Tāde shū bèi wǒ nǎzoule.

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

Activity 1

Questions and Answers

Respond to the following questions based on your knowledge of traveling.

1. Nǎge Měiguode hángkōng gōngsī zuì hǎo? Wèishénme?
2. Zuò fēijī lǚxíngde shíhou kéyì dài duōshao xíngli? Shénme yàngde xíngli kéyì suǐshēn dài?
3. Yàoshi nǐde xíngli chāozhōngle, nǐ děi duō gěi duōshao qián?
4. Zài fēijīshang nǐ xīhuan kào chuāng(hu)de zuòwèi háishi kào guòdào? Wèishénme?
5. Jūnrén mǎipiào bǐ lǎobǎixìng mǎipiào piányi yìdiǎnr ma? Wèishénme?
6. Lǚxíngde shíhou shénme shǒuxù zuì máfan?
7. Rúguǒ nǐ yǒu hěn duōde xíngli děi yùnzǒu, zuì piányide fázi shì shénme?
8. Nǐ bānguo jiā ma? Rúguǒ bānguo, nǐ yìgòng bānguo jǐcì le? Dōu shì cóng nǎli dài nǎli?
9. Nǐ shàngyìcì huíguode shíhou shì zènme huílaide? Zài lùshang tíngle méitíng? Rúguǒ tíngle, yìgòng tíngle jǐcì? Dōu zài nǎli?
10. "Yílù Píngān" zhèjù huà zěnme yòng?

Activity 2

Role Playing

Procedure: Work in pairs. While one of you role plays an airline ticket agent, the other plays a traveler. Then switch roles. Try to cover the following topics:

1. Hotel/motel reservations
2. Car rentals
3. Fares
4. Passport and visa (qiānzhèng) assistance

Activity 3

Discussion

Procedure: Discuss the following topics with classmates:

1. The advantages and disadvantages of traveling by AMTRAK.
2. Why American railway business has declined.
3. The advantages and disadvantages of traveling by steamship (lúnchuán).
4. If you were on a honeymoon (mìyuè/dù mìyuè) would you prefer to travel by air, by rail, by steamship, or by car?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. Chinese-English: Cover the Pinyin text below. Teacher: Randomly select students and read each paragraph/sentence twice with a short pause between readings. Student: Say aloud the English equivalent. (translate)

(Xiǎo Zhào hé Lǎo Chén shì tóngxué; liǎnggerén zhùzai yige gōngyùli.)

1. XZ: Lǎo Chén, gāngcái yóudiyuán sòngle yige bāoguǒ lái, shì nǐde. Wǒ fàngzai nǐ fángjiānli le.
2. LC: Xièxie nǐ. Shì shénme dìfāng jīlaide?
3. XZ: Cóng Shànghǎi jīlaide; shì yībāo shū. Hái yǒu yīfēng guàhàoxīn, nǐ děi dào yóujú qù ná.
4. LC: Nǐ wèishénme búti wǒ shōuxia ne?
5. XZ: Guàhàoxīn, nǐ děi qiānzi (sign); biéren bùnéng shōuxia. Yóudiyuán liúxià yìzhāng guàhào shōutiáo (receipt), wǒ fàngzai nǐ shūzhuōshang le.
6. LC: Wǒ kànkàn shì shéi jīlaide. (Tā jīnqū bǎ bāoguǒ hé shōutiáo dōu náchūlai.) Bāoguǒ hé xīn dōu shì Wáng Dànzhōng jīlaide. Zhēn qiǎo (What a coincidence), yīkuàir jīdao le.
7. XZ: Bāoguǒli shì shénme shū a?
8. LC: Shì yītào Zhōngwénde xiǎoxué jiàokēshū, zài zhèr mǎibùzhào, suóyì wǒ qǐng tā cóng Shànghǎi gěi wǒ jīlai. (Tā shuōzhe huà, bǎ bāoguǒ dǎkǎi.)
9. XZ: Měiyìběn shū dōu zhème báo a!
10. LC: Zhè shì gěi xiǎo háizi niànde, bùnéng tài hòu. (Tā kànle yíxià shǒubiǎo.) Hái yǒu bàngē zhōngtóu yóujú cái guānmen ne. Wǒ xiǎng qù ná guàhàoxīn gānghǎo.
11. XZ: Wǒ gēn nǐ yīkuàir qù.
12. LC: Wǒ kéyì tì nǐ mǎi yóupiào huòshi jīxīn.
13. XZ: Wǒ yǒu hǎojī jiàn shìqing yào bàn ne. Wǒ háishi gēn nǐ yīkuàir qù hǎole.
14. LC: Nàme wǒmen jiù kuàiyidiǎnr zǒu ba.
15. XZ: Wǒ yě yào jì yige bāoguǒ. Wǒ yǐjīng bāohǎole. Zǒu ba. (Nále yige bāoguǒ.)

(Zài lùshang)

16. LC: Nǐ zhège bāoguǒli shì shénme?
17. XZ: Wǒ gěi wǒ mǔqīn jī yīhé (a box of) qiǎokèlītáng. Xià xīngqīliù shì tāde shēngri. Zhè yīhé sānbàng (three pounds), hěn zhòng (heavy) a! Bùzhīdao yào duōshǎo yóufèi.
18. LC: Guónèi (domestic) yóubāo (postal parcel) yòngbùliǎo duōshǎo yóufèi; búbì bàoguān, yòu búbì fùshuǐ.
19. XZ: Wǒ hái yào mǎi jǐzhāng yóujiǎn.
20. LC: Yàobúshì nǐ shuo, wǒ jiù wàngle, wǒ yě yào mǎi yóujiǎn.

B. English-Chinese: Teacher: Sequentially assign sentences to each student. Student: First read the sentence carefully, then translate into Chinese. Concentrate on word-order, fluency, tones, and pronunciation.

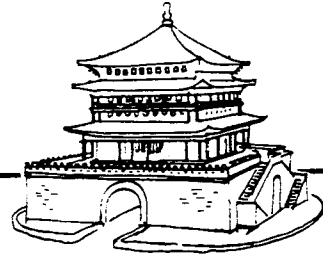
(Xiao Zhao and Lao Chen are on the way to the post office. Xiao Zhao is going to post a parcel, and Lao Chen is going to get his registered airmail letter.)

1. XZ: It is much more convenient to use air letter paper; I don't have to buy airmail letter paper and envelopes, and I won't write too much in one letter.
2. LC: I often write long letters to my older brother; the letters are usually overweight.
3. XZ: What do you write about in your letters?
4. LC: Anything which comes to my mind, xiǎngqǐlai, at the time. My older brother and I like many things in common, yí-yàng.
5. XZ: That's interesting.
6. LC: We like the same kind of books and movies mostly. Now he is in Japan, so I spend quite a lot on postage for overweight airmail letters.
7. XZ: That is still cheaper than long distance calls.
8. LC: Oh, yes. You must spend a lot on long distance calls.
9. XZ: But I make only domestic, guónèi, calls, not as far as to Japan.
10. LC: Have you met the new postal clerk in the post office?
11. XZ: Which one? I didn't notice a new one.
12. LC: The tall and good-looking man around 20.
13. XZ: Oh, yes, now I remember. What about him?
14. LC: He is my former classmate from elementary school.
15. XZ: Did you go to the same high school too?
16. LC: No, we went to two different high schools, but in the same town. Since we left the town, we had not met before we came here.
17. XZ: How nice it is to meet a childhood classmate away from your hometown.

18. LC: And his wife too. They have already got a three-month-old baby.
19. XZ: OK. Let's invite their whole family. How about next weekend?
20. LC: I'll ask him. I hope he is there today.

LESSON 29

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- business terminology.
- telephone operations.
- measurements cháng, kuān, dī.



Yǒu yào jǐn de shì, děi tōng diàn huà.

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- make a phone call to the operator for information.
- ask and answer questions about the size of a room.
- ask and answer questions about importing and exporting.

GLOSSARY



- | | | |
|--------------------------|-------|--|
| 1. āiyā | 哎呀 | N: exclamation, interjection |
| 2. bèn | 笨 | SV: be stupid, clumsy, awkward |
| 3. běndì | 本地 | PW: local, native |
| 4. bù | 簿 | N: book (for taking notes, keeping accounts) |
| a. diànhuàbù | 电话簿 | N: telephone directory |
| b. dēngjìbù | 登记簿 | N: register |
| c. bùzi | 簿子 | N: notebook |
| 5. chǎng | 厂 | N: factory, mill, plant, yard |
| diànzǐchǎng | 电子厂 | N: electronics factory |
| 6. chángtú | 长途 | N: long distance |
| 7. chūmén | 出门 | VO: to go out (of the town) |
| 8. dī | 低 | SV: be low |
| 9. fángzi | 房子 | N: house (M: <u>-suǒr</u> , <u>-dòng</u>) |
| 10. fángzū | 房租 | N: rent (for a house, flat, etc.) |
| 11. fēnjī | 分机 | N: telephone extension |
| 12. gōngchéngshī | 工程师 | N: engineer |
| 13. gōnggòng diànhuàjiān | 公共电话间 | N: public telephone booth (or box) |
| 14. gōngsī | 公司 | N: company, corporation |
| 15. Héběi | 河北 | N: (a province in North China) |
| 16. hétóng | 合同 | N: contract |
| 17. huàwùyuán | 话务员 | N: telephone operator |
| 18. jiàqián | 价钱 | N: price |
| 19. jiàohào | 叫号 | VO: to call station to station |

20. jiàorén 叫人 VO: to call person to person
(phone call)
21. jìnchéng 进城 VO: to go into the city or town
22. jìnchūkǒu 进出口 N: imports and exports;
entrances and exits
- a. jìnkǒu 进口 N: imports; entrances
- b. chūkǒu 出口 N: exports; exits
23. kē 科 N: section (a subdivision of
an administrative unit)
- chūkǒukē 出口科 N: export section
24. kǒudàir 口袋(儿) N: pocket
25. kuān 宽 SV: be wide, be broad; width
26. měijīn 美金 N: American currency (lit.
American gold)
27. méixiǎngdào 没想到 RV/IE: didn't expect/unexpected
28. rēng 扔 V: to throw, to toss, to cast
29. shàngjiē 上街 VO: to go into the street, to go
downtown
30. shūfáng 书房 N: study room
31. tōng 通 V/RVE: to open, to pass through/to
get through
- a. tōngdiànhuà 通电话 PH: to put through a phone
call
- b. dǎtōngle 打通了 (The phone call has been put
through.)
32. xiǎoxīn 小心 SV/V: be careful/to look out for
33. xiǎozìtiáo(r) 小字条(儿) N: a scrap of paper
34. xīnr 信儿 N: message
35. yáncháng 延长 V: to lengthen, to extend, to
prolong

36. yīngchǐ 英尺 M: an English foot
 chǐ 尺 M: a Chinese foot
37. yùjiàn 遇见 V: to meet, to run into
38. zhànxiàn 占线 VO: the (telephone) line's busy

Old words with new usage

39. lái 来 V: to send/to call
 Tā gěi nǐ lái xìn le ma? (Did he/she write to you?)
 Wǒ xiàwàng tā míngtiān gěi wǒ lái diànhuà. (I'll call him/her again tomorrow.)
40. qù 去 V: to send/to call
 Nǐ gěi tā qù le jǐfēng xìn le? (How many letters have you written him/her so far?)
 Wǒ yào gěi tā qùge diànhuà. (I want to call him/her.)
41. jiào/ràng... (gěi) 叫/让... (给) CV: by (agent marker)
 Diǎnxīn jiào/ràng xiǎoháimen (gěi)chī le. (The pastry was eaten by the children.)
 Wǒde qián dōujiào/ràng háizimen (gěi)yòng le. (My money has been all spent by my children.)

Àikèmǐ	爱克米	ACME
Fāng Bǎoshān	方保山	proper name
Wáng Mínlǐ	王明理	proper name
Zhāng Wéndé	张文德	proper name
Lǐzhā Tàilè	理查·泰勒	proper name

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



Dǎ Diànhuà (Telephone Calls)

W: Wáng Mínglǐ
T: Taylor
H: Operator

O: The Other Party
V: Voice
Z: Zhāng Wéndé

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | T: Wǒ yào dǎ yíge chángtú diànhuà dào Shànghǎi. Diànhuà hàomǎ shì sān wǔ yāo bā sān líng. | I want to make a long-distance call to Shanghai. The telephone number is 35-1830. |
| 2 | H: Shì jiàorén diànhuà hái shì jiàohào diànhuà? | Is it a person-to-person call or a station-to-station call? |
| 3 | T: Jiàohào diànhuà. | It's a station-to-station call. |
| 4 | H: Qǐng děngyíděng. | Wait a moment. |
| 5 | H: Zhànzhē xiàng nē.
(Taylor tries again later.) | The line is busy. |
| 6 | H: Méirén jiē.
(After a few minutes, Taylor tries again.) | There is no answer. |
| 7 | H: Jiē tōng le, qǐng jiǎnghuà. | Now we've gotten through. Please start talking. |

Frame 2

- | | | |
|----|--|--|
| 8 | T: Wei! Nǐ shì nǎlǐ? | Hello, what place is this? |
| 9 | O: Shànghǎi Diànzǐchǎng. | Shanghai Electronics Factory. |
| 10 | T: Qǐng Wáng Mínglǐ Wáng gōngchéngsī tīng diànhuà. | Please ask Engineer Wang Mingli to answer the phone. |

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| 11 | O: Nǐde shēngyīn tài xiǎo, qǐng dà yīdiǎn shēngyīn shuō. Nǐ shì nǎlǐ? | Your voice is too low. Please speak louder. What place is this? |
| 12 | T: Wǒ shì Měiguó Àikèmī (ACME) Gōngsī de Lǐzhā Tàilè. Qǐng Wáng Mínglǐ Wáng Xiānsheng tīng diànhuà. | I am Richard Taylor of the the American ACME Company. Please ask Mr. Wang Mingli to answer the telephone. |
| 13 | O: Qǐng děngyíděng. | Please wait a moment. |

: Frame 3

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 14 | W: Wei, Tàilè Xiānsheng ma? | Hello, is this Mr. Taylor? |
| 15 | T: Shì. Nǐ shì Wáng Mínglǐ Wáng Gōngchéngshǐ ma? | Yes. Are you Engineer Wang Mingli? |
| 16 | W: Shì. Nǐ zài nǎlǐ a? | Yes. Where are you? |
| 17 | T: Wǒ zài Běijīng. Xià-xíngqì wǒ yào dào Shànghǎi qù, xiǎng gēn nǐ tántán wǒmēnde hétóng. | I am in Beijing. I am going to Shanghai next week. I'd like to talk with you about our contract. |
| 18 | W: Hǎojíle... (After taking care of the business, they are now engaged in small talk about a mutual acquaintance, Paul Martin who also works for ACME.) Bǎolúo Mǎdǐng huíguo yǐhòu, gěi nǐ xiěxìn le ma? | Wonderful. Has Paul Martin written to you since he returned to his country? |
| 19 | T: Jiù xiěguo yīfēng xìn. Nǐ jìde bùjìde tā shuōguo huídào Niūyuē yǐhòu yào mǎi yìsuǒ fángzi. | (He) Only wrote one letter. Do you remember he mentioned that he wanted to buy a house after he returned to New York? |
| 20 | W: Jìde, jìde. Tā mǎile méiyóu? | I remember that. Did he buy it? |
| 21 | T: Méimǎi. Niūyuē de fángzi jiàqián dōu búdǐ. Xiànzài tā hé tā àiren hái | He didn't. The prices of New York's houses are pretty high. Now he and his wife are still |

- zhùzài gōngyù. Wófáng hěn xiǎo zhīyou shìèr yǐngchǐ cháng shí yǐngchǐ kuān. Kěshì fángzū yíge yuè yìqiānduō měijīn.
- living in an apartment. The bedroom is very small, only twelve feet long, ten feet wide. But the rent is over a thousand U.S. dollars per month.
- 22 W: Tā xǐhuan kànshū, yīngdāng you yíjiān shūfáng.
- He likes to read. He should have a study.
- 23 T: Nǎli háiyou shūfáng?
- Where do you get a study?
- 24 H: (Cut in) Shíjiān dào le. Yàobuyao yáncháng?
- It's time (to hang up). Do you want to continue?
- 25 T: (To the Operator) Zài shuō liǎngjù jiù wánle. (to Wáng) Wáng Xiānsheng, shíjiān dào le, wǒ bu duōtán le. Guò liǎngtiān zánmen Shànghǎi jiàn ba!
- We will be finished after a couple of words. Mr. Wang, it's time to hang up. We'll stop here. We will meet in Shanghai in a couple of days.
- 26 W: Hǎo, zàijiàn.
- Good. Good-bye.

Frame 4

Běndì Diànhuà - Local Calls

- 27 Z: Tàilè Xiānsheng, nǐ zài zhǎo shénme a?
- Mr. Taylor, what are you looking for?
- 28 T: Jīntiān zǎoshang wǒ shàngjiē/jīnchéng de shíhou yùjiànle Héběi Jīnchūkǒu Gōngsī Chūkǒukē de Fāng Bǎoshān. Tā bǎ gōngsī de diànhuà xiě zài yízhāng xiǎozìtiáoshang gěi wǒ, wǒ jiù fàngzài kǒudàilile. Xiànzài zhǎobúzhè le. Dàgài ràng wǒ buxiǎoxīn gěi rēng le.
- When I was going downtown this morning, I met Fang Baoshan of the Export Section, Hebei Import and Export Company. He wrote the phone number of the company on a small piece of paper and gave it to me, and I put it in my pocket. Now I can't find it. Perhaps I was careless and threw it away.
- 29 Z: Nà búyào jīn, nǐ chá diànhuàbù jiù kěyǐ chádao le.
- That's not important. You can find it in the phone book.

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 30 | T: Nǐ kàn wǒ duōme bèn.
Zěnmé méixiǎngdào ne!
(after looking up in the
phone book) Nàge gōngsīde
diànhuà shì èryāo-liùsānjiǔbā,
fēnjiǐ liùshiwǔ. | You see how stupid I am. How
could I not think of it?
That company's phone number
is 21-6398, extension 65. |
| 31 | T: (Picking up the phone
and finds it out of order)
Aiya! Diànhuà huài le. | Oh! The phone is out of
order. |
| 32 | Z: Lí zhèir bùyuán yǒu yíge
gōnggòng diànhuàjiān. | Not far from here there is a
public telephone booth. |
| 33 | T: Zài nǎli? | Where? |
| 34 | Z: Nǐ chūqu wàng yòu zǒu
jiù kànjian yíge yóutǒng.
Gōnggòng diànhuàjiān jiù
zài pángbian. | You go out to the right. You
will see a mailbox. The
public telephone booth is
right there at the side. |

Frame 5

(In a Public Phone booth)

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 35 | T: Wèi, Qǐng Fāng Bǎoshān
Xiānsheng tīng diànhuà. | Hello, please ask Mr. Fang
Baoshan to answer the phone. |
| 36 | V: Tā gāng chūmén le, míng-
tiān cái néng huílai. | He is out of town. He'll be
back tomorrow. |
| 37 | T: Tā míngtiān shénme shí-
hou huílai? | When will he be back to-
morrow? |
| 38 | V: Dàgài xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn-
zhong jiù kěyǐ huílai. Nǐ
yào liúge xīnr ma? | He'll be back probably by two
o'clock tomorrow afternoon.
Do you want to leave a
message? |
| 39 | T: Hǎo. Qǐng gàosu tā wǒ
míngtiān xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎnzhong
yǐhou zài gěi tā dǎ diànhuà. | OK: Please tell him I will
call him after two o'clock in
the afternoon tomorrow. |

对话

W: Wáng Mínlǐ
T: Taylor
H: Operator

O: The Other Party
V: Voice
Z: Zhāng Wéndé

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | T: 我要打一个长途电话到上海。电话号码是 351830。 | I want to make a long-distance call to Shanghai. The telephone number is 35-1830. |
| 2 | H: 是叫人电话还是叫号电话? | Is it a person-to-person call or a station-to-station call? |
| 3 | T: 叫号电话。 | It's a station-to-station call. |
| 4 | H: 请等一等。 | Wait a moment. |
| 5 | H: 占着线呢。 | The line is busy. |
| | (Taylor tries again later.) | |
| 6 | H: 没人接。 | There is no answer. |
| | (After a few minutes, Taylor tries again.) | |
| 7 | H: 接通了, 请讲话。 | Now we've gotten through. Please start talking. |

Frame 2

- | | | |
|---|-------------|-------------------------------|
| 8 | T: 喂! 你是哪里? | Hello, what place is this? |
| 9 | O: 上海电子厂。 | Shanghai Electronics Factory. |

- | | | |
|----|-------------------------------|---|
| 10 | T: 请王明理, 王工程师听电话。 | Please ask Engineer Wang Mingli to answer the phone. |
| 11 | O: 你的声音太小, 请大一点声音说。你是哪里? | Your voice is too low. Please speak louder. What place is this? |
| 12 | T: 我是美国爱克米公司的理查·泰勒。请王明理先生听电话。 | I am Richard Taylor of the the American ACME Company. Please ask Mr. Wang Mingli to answer the telephone. |
| 13 | O: 请等一等。 | Please wait a moment. |

Frame 3

- | | | |
|----|----------------------------------|---|
| 14 | W: 喂, 泰勒先生吗? | Hello, is this Mr. Taylor? |
| 15 | T: 是。你是王明理, 王工程师吗? | Yes. Are you Engineer Wang Mingli? |
| 16 | W: 是。你在哪里啊? | Yes. Where are you? |
| 17 | T: 我在北京。下星期我要到上海去, 想跟你谈谈我们的合同。 | I am in Beijing. I am going to Shanghai next week. I'd like to talk with you about our contract. |
| 18 | W: 好极了... 保罗·马丁回国以后, 给你写信了吗? | Wonderful. Has Paul Martin written to you since he returned to his country? |
| 19 | T: 就写过一封信。你记得不记得他说过回到纽约以后要买一所房子。 | (He) Only wrote one letter. Do you remember he mentioned that he wanted to buy a house after he returned to New York? |

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 20 | W: 记得, 记得。他买了没有? | I remember that. Did he buy it? |
| 21 | T: 没买。纽约的房子价钱都不低。现在他和他爱人还住在公寓。卧房很小, 只有十二英尺长, 十英尺宽。可是房租一个月一千多美金。 | He didn't. The prices of New York's houses are pretty high. Now he and his wife are still living in an apartment. The bedroom is very small, only twelve feet long, ten feet wide. But the rent is over a thousand U.S. dollars per month. |
| 22 | W: 他喜欢看书, 应当有一间书房。 | He likes to read. He should have a study. |
| 23 | T: 哪里还有书房? | Where do you get a study? |
| 24 | H: 时间到了, 要不要延长? | It's time (to hang up). Do you want to continue? |
| 25 | T: 再说两句就完了。王先生, 时间到了, 我不多谈了。过两天咱们上海见吧! | We will be finished after a couple of words. Mr. Wang, It's time to hang up. We'll stop here. We will meet in Shanghai in a couple of days. |
| 26 | W: 好。再见。 | Good. Good-bye. |

Frame 4.

- | | | |
|----|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 27 | Z: 泰勒先生, 你在找什么啊? | Mr. Taylor, what are you looking for? |
|----|------------------|---------------------------------------|

- 28 T: 今天早上我上街/进城的时候遇见了河北进出口公司出口科的方保山。他把公司的电话号码写在一张小字条上给我,我就放在口袋儿里了。现在找不着了。大概让我不小心给扔了。
- When I was going downtown this morning, I met Fang Baoshan of the Export Section, Hebei Import and Export Company. He wrote the phone number of the company on a small piece of paper and gave it to me, and I put in in my pocket. Now I can't find it. Perhaps I was careless and threw it away.
- 29 Z: 那不要紧,你查电话簿就可以查到了。
- That's not important. You can find it in the phone book.
- 30 T: 你看我多么笨。怎么没想到呢!那个公司的电话是216398,分机65。
- You see how stupid I am. How could I not think of it? That company's phone number is 21-6398, extension 65.
- 31 T: 哎呀!电话坏了。
- Oh! The phone is out of order.
- 32 Z: 离这儿不远有一个公共电话间。
- Not far from here there is a public telephone booth.
- 33 T: 在哪里?
- Where?
- 34 Z: 你出去往右走就看见一个邮筒。公共电话间就在旁边。
- You go out to the right. You will see a mailbox. The public telephone booth is right there at the side.

Frame 5
(In a Public Phone booth)

- 35 T: 喂,请方宝山先生听电话。
- Hello, please ask Mr. Fang Baoshan to answer the phone.

- | | | |
|----|----------------------------|---|
| 36 | V: 他刚出门了。明天才能回来。 | He is out of town. He'll be back tomorrow. |
| 37 | T: 他明天什么时候回来? | When will he be back tomorrow? |
| 38 | V: 大概下午两点钟就可以回来。你要留个信儿吗? | He'll be back probably by two o'clock tomorrow afternoon. Do you want to leave a message? |
| 39 | T: 好。请告诉他我明天下午两点钟以后再给他打电话。 | OK: Please tell him I will call him after two o'clock in the afternoon tomorrow. |

SUMMARY



Frame 1

a. Cháng tú, "long distance," modifies diànhuà, "telephone," to make "long-distance phone call."

b. In the number 351830, notice that the 1 yao and 0 ling are used in telephone numbers.

Frame 2

The noun chǎng "factory, plant" can be used as a suffix to create a new noun:

xiéchǎng: a shoe factory

DRILLS I



A and B. Substitution

Substitute the underlined parts with those given in the columns.

1. Wǒ gàosong diànhuà gōngsī wǒ yào dǎ yíge chángtú-diànhuà.

a.	operator	person-to-person call
b.	operator	station-to-station call

2. Chūle dàmén, wǎng dōng zǒu, jiù kànjian lùkǒu.

a.	west	public telephone booth
b.	left	mail box
c.	right	bus stop
d.	south	import-export co.
e.	north	electronics factory

3. Diànhuàjú de pángbiānr jiù shì diànbàojú.

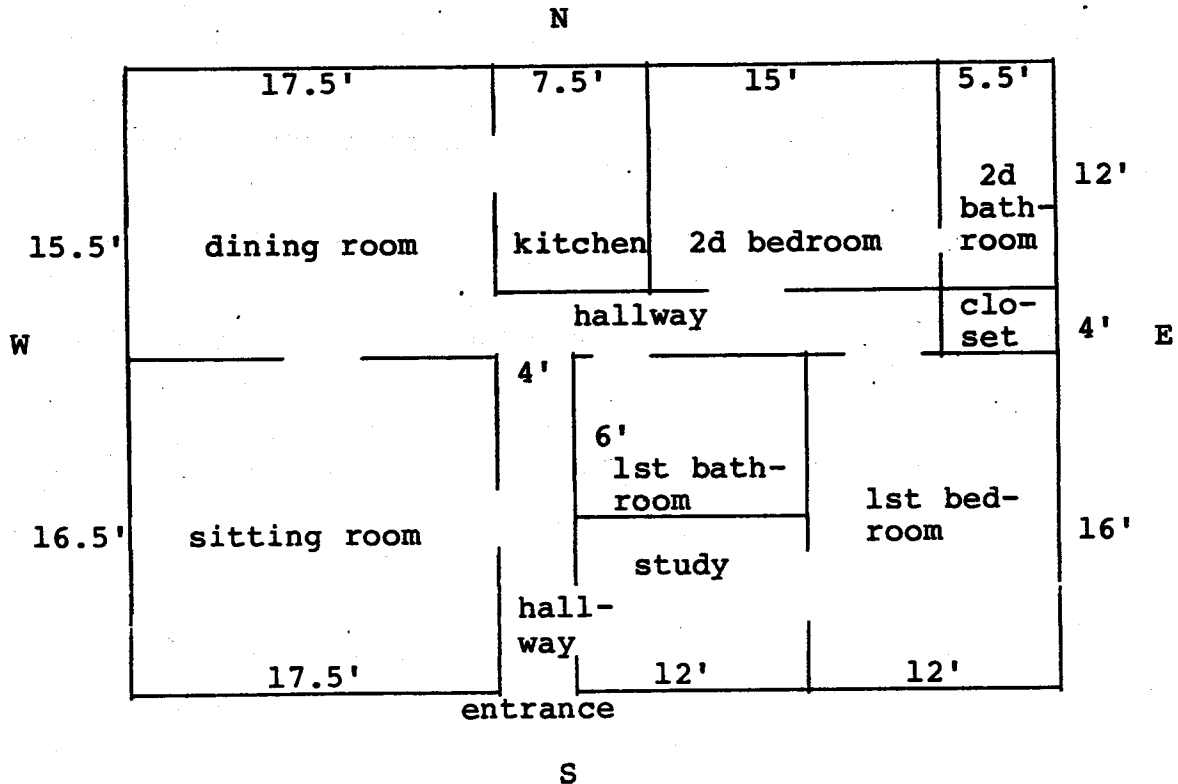
a.	mailbox	right side	public phone booth
b.	import-export co.	east side	electronics factory
c.	Engineer Wang's house	south side	Fang's house, -- Fang of the import section
d.	import section	left side	export section
e.	electronics factory	west side	a large hotel

4. Jiàokèshū zài diànhuàbù dīxià.

a.	dictionary	textbook	on top of
b.	public phone booth	entrance	left side
c.	mailbox	bus stop	right side
d.	ticket window	service counter	east side
e.	the small shop	lobby	inside
f.	snack bar	entrance	south side
g.	elevator	staircase	north side
h.	registration	service counter	next (to)

C. Question-answer

Answer the questions according to the information given in the following diagram.



1. Nàge kètíng jīchǐ cháng? jīchǐ kuān?
2. Nàge fàntíng jīchǐ cháng?? jīchǐ kuān?
3. Chúfáng jīchǐ cháng? jīchǐ kuān?
4. Shūfáng duó dà?
5. Dìyíge wòfáng duó dà?
6. Dì'èrge wòfáng duó dà?
7. Dìyíge xīzǎofáng duó cháng? duó kuān?
8. Dè'èrge xīzǎofáng duó cháng? duó kuān?
9. Guòdào duó kuān?
10. Kètíng gēn fàntíng yíyàng cháng ma? Duó cháng?

D. Question-answer

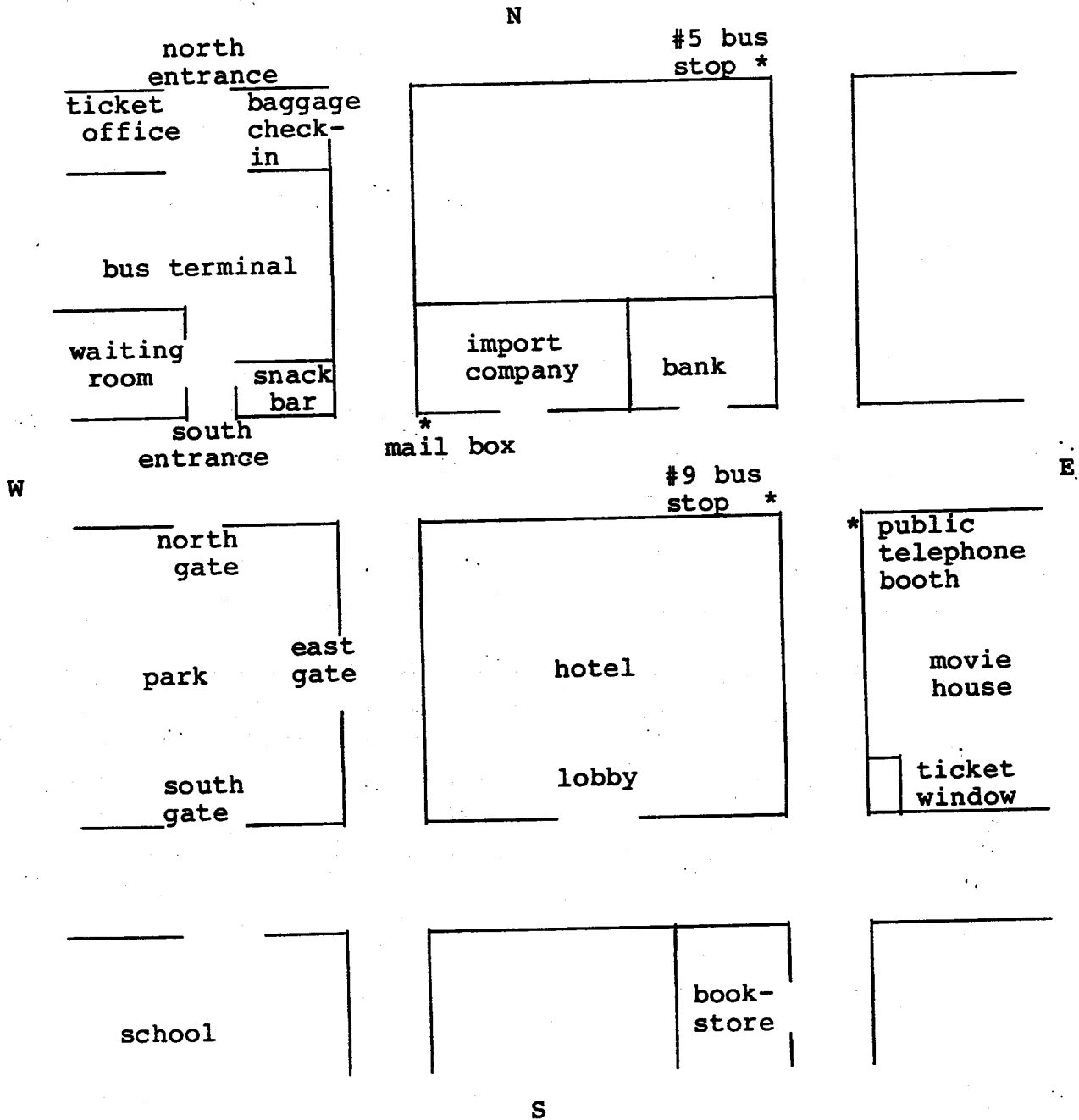
Answer the questions in complete sentences according to the information given in the map in Drill E on the next page.

1. Cóng xuéxiào dào gōnggòng-diànhuàjiān bǐ (cóng xuéxiào) dào yóutǒng jìn ma?
2. Cóng xuéxiào dào jiǔlù gōnggòng-qìchēzhàn bǐ dào wǔlù gōnggòng-qìchēzhàn yuǎn ma?
3. Cóng diànyǐngyuàn (movie house) dào shūdiàn gēn dào gōngyuán yíyàng yuǎn ma?
4. Cóng lǚguǎnde dàmén dào gōngyuán gēn dào gōnggòng-qìchē zōngzhàn yíyàng yuǎn me?
5. Cóng shūdiàn dào diànyǐngyuànde shòupiàochù bǐ dào yínháng yuǎn me?
6. Cóng gōnggòng-qìchē zōngzhàn (terminal) de shòupiàochù dào jìnchūkǒu-gōngsī bǐ dào yínháng yuǎn ma? Chà duōshao (differing by how much)?
7. Cóng gōnggòng-diànhuàjiān dào lǚguǎn bǐ dào xuéxiào yuǎn ma?
8. Shūdiàn lí xuéxiào jìn ne, háishi lí gōnggòng-qìchē zōngzhàn (terminal) jìn?

9. Cóng gōngyuán nánmén dào gōngòng-diàn huàjiān jìn ne, háishi dào diànyīnyuàn shòupìàochù jìn?

10. Diànyīnyuàn lí lǚguǎn yuǎn ne, háishi lí gōngyuán yuǎn?

E. Respond to each of the instructions by giving directions according to the information on the following map.



* Where the object is located.

1. Cóng xuéxiàode dàmén chūlai, zěnme dào gōnggòng-diànhuàjān qù?
2. Cóng gōngyuánde nánmén (south gate) chūlai, zěnme dào yóutǒng qù?
3. Cóng gōnggòng-qìchē zǒngzhàn (terminal) běimén (north gate) chulai, zěnme dào shūdiàn qù?
4. Cóng diànyīngyuàn (movie house) dàmén chūlai, zěnme dào yóutǒng nàr qù?
5. Cóng diànyīngyuàn (movie house) dàmén chūlai, zěnme dào yóutǒng nàr qù?
6. Cóng jīnchūkǒu-gōngsī chūlai, zěnme dào shūdiàn qù?
7. Cóng wǔlù gōnggòngqìchē xiàle chē, zěnme dào xuéxiào qù?
8. Cóng gōngyuánde dōngmén (east gate) chūlai, zěnme dào diànyīngyuàn de shòupiàochù qù?
9. Cóng lǚguǎnde dàmén chūlai, zěnme dào gōnggòng-qìchē zǒngzhàn (terminal) de shòupiàochù qù?
10. Cóng jiǔlù gōnggòng-qìchē xiàle chē, zěnme dào gōngyuán qù?

G. Restructure

Reorganize each sentence by giving the same information in another way.

(T) Zhèběn diànhuàbù gēn zhèběn zìdiǎn yíyàng hòu.

(S) Zhège diànhuàbù bùbǐ zhèběn diànhuàbù hòu, yě bùbǐ tā bó.

(T) Zhèběn diànhuàbù bǐ zhèběn zìdiǎn cháng yí cùn.
(one inch)

(S) Zhèběn zìdiǎn bǐ zhèběn diànhuàbù duǎn (short) yí cùn.

1. Tāde fángjiān bǐ wǒde (fángjiān) dà de duō.
2. Zhèli fángzi de jiàqián méiyǒu Niǔyuē (fángzide jiàqián) nàme gāo (high).
3. Nǐde shūfáng bǐ wǒde (shūfáng) cháng sānchǐ (three feet).

4. Nǐde diànhuàjī (telephone set) bǐ wǒde duǎn (short) liǎngcùn (two inches).
5. Zhège bái diànhuàjī bǐ nàge hēi diànhuàjī zhǎi (narrow) yīcùn (one inch).
6. Zhèběn xīn jiàokèshū bǐ nàběn jiù jiàokèshū kuān bànchùn (half an inch).
7. Xiǎo Lǐ bǐ Xiǎo Zhāng cōngmíng (clear).
8. Lǎo Chén gēn Xiǎo Lǐ yíyàng bèn.
9. Zhāng Tàitai bǐ Zhāng Xiānsheng xiǎoxin, (The opposite of xiǎoxin is cūxin).
10. Tā měitiān rēngde zhǐ bǐ yòngde zhǐ duō.

H. Restructure

Reorganize each sentence by giving the same information in another way.

1. Tā měigeyuè dǎde chángtú diànhuà bǐ tā dǎde běndì diànhuà duō.
2. Dǎ diànhuà bǐ dǎ diànbào kuài, yě bǐ dǎ diànbào fángbiàn.
3. Wáng Gōngchéngshì shuōhuàde shēngyīn bǐ Tàilè Xiānsheng (shuōhuàde shēngyīn) dà.
4. Nǐ jiālǐ de diànhuà fēnjī bǐ wǒmen bàngōngshìli de hái duō.
5. Zhètiáo jiēshang bǐ nàtiáo jiēshang duō sānge gōnggòng-diànhuàjiān.
6. Tāmen chūkǒukē bǐ wǒmen jìnkǒukē (import section) duō liǎngge diànhuà fēnjī.
7. Nǐ shàngyī (jacket) de kǒudàir bǐ wǒ shàngyīde kǒudàir duō.
8. (Zuótiān kǎo Zhōngwén wǒmen bān hé tāmen bān dōu yáncháng shíjiān le.) Tāmen bān bǐ wǒmen bān duō yánchángle shífēnzhong.
9. Zài zhèr, běndìrén (local people) mǎi dōngxī bùbǐ wàidì (other place) láide rén (mǎi dōngxī) piányi.
10. Zài Měiguó, dǎ chángtú diànhuà bùbǐ dǎ běndì diànhuà máfan, dànshi guī de duō.

I. Combination

Combine each pair of sentences into one by using the suitable conjunctive adverb chosen from the following list.

jirányàoburányàobúshisuírán...dànshi

(T) Wǒ méixiǎngdào zhèbān
gōnggòng qīchēshang rén
zhème duo. Rúguǒ wǒ
xiǎngdàole, wǒ jiù búzuò
(zhèbān chē) le.

(S) Wǒ méixiǎngdào zhèbān
gōnggòng-qīchēshang rén
zhème duo, yàoburán wǒ jiù
búzuò le.

Note: Many words can be deleted after using yàoburán.

(T) Rúguǒ nǐ zuótiān méi-
gàosong wǒ, wǒ dào xiànzài
hái bùzhīdao zhèjian shì
shì(qing) ne.

(S) Yàobúshi nǐ zuótiān gào-
song wǒ, wǒ dào xiànzài hái
bùzhīdao zhèjian shì(qing)
ne.

Note: After using yàobúshi, the original méiqàosong is changed into gàosong.

1. Tā bùxǐhuan kànbào. Tā wèishénme dīngle háoji fèn bàozhǐ?
2. Tā hěn xǐhuan dǎ diànhuà. Tā gòngyùli méiyóu diànhuà.
3. Nǐ bùxǐhuan dǎ diànhuà. Wèishénme nǐ jiāli měige fángjiān dōu yǒu fēnjǐ ne?
4. Wǒ méixiǎngdao zhèrde fángzi jiàqián zhème gāo (high).
5. Tā bùxiǎng zuò gōngchéngshǐ. Zěnme tā xiànzài hái niàn gōngchéng ne?
6. Zài jiēshang wǒ yùjiàn yíge lǎo tóngxué. Rúguǒ wǒ méi yùjiàn zhège tóngxué, wǒ zǎo jiù huilai le.
7. Nǐ zū fángzi de shíhou gēn fángdōng (landlord) dīngle hétong. Wèishénme fángdōng xiànzài jiào nǐ bānjiā ne?
8. Wǒ zài biéde dìfang zhǎodaole yíge hěn hǎo de gōngzuò. Rúguǒ méizhǎodao zhège gōngzuò wǒ jiù bùbānjiā le.
9. Tā shì běndìrén (native of this place). Wèishénme tā zhubúdao fángzi ne?
10. Tā shì běndìrén. Tā xiànzài méiyóu gōngzuò, jiù hěn nán zūdao fángzi le.

J. Expansion

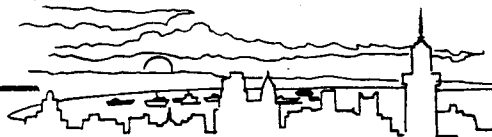
Expand each sentence by adding the additional information in parentheses to it.

(T) Zuótiān wǒmen kǎo Zhōngwén,
lǎoshī bǎ kǎoshì shíjiān
yánchángle.
(for ten minutes)

(S) Zuótiān wǒmen kǎo Zhōng-
wén, lǎoshī bǎ shíjiān yán-
chángle shífēnzhong.

1. Tā wànle bǎ nàge zìtiáo fàngzài nǎr le.
(in which pocket)
2. Wǒ gāngcái zài jiēshang yùjiànle Wáng Gōngchéngshī.
(of the electronics factory)
3. Tā yào gěi Fāng Bǎoshān dǎ yíge chángtú-diànhuà.
(Fang of the import-export company)
4. Wǒ zū fángzi de shíhou gēn fángdōng (landlord) dìngle hétong.
(of one year)
5. Nǐ yào dǎ nǎ yìzhǒng de chángtú-diànhuà?
(person-to-person, or station-to-station)
6. Wǒ méi cháchūlai tāde diànhuà-hàomǎ.
(from the phone directory)
7. Pǔtōngde gōnggòng-diànhuàjiān chàbùduō zhǐ yǒu sānchǐ cháng.
(also three feet wide)
8. Tā kànde bào shì Niūyuē-Shíào (New York Times).
(not a or the local newspaper)
9. Tā shì cóng shànghǎi lái de.
(not a native of this place)
10. Nǐ zuìhǎo gěi tā dǎ yíge chángtú-diànhuà.
(otherwise send a telegram)

DRILLS II



A. Tell your teacher the approximate average hourly rate (wages) for the following trades/professions. If you don't know, make an educated guess.

1. Màibàode
2. Màixiéde
3. Xiwǎnde
4. Zuòfànde
5. Pèiyàode
6. lǐfǎde (barber)
7. Kānháizide (baby-sitter)
8. Kāihuǒchēde
9. Xiūlǐqìchēde
10. Cāchuānghuàde (window washer)

B. Describe the manner in which you perform a certain activity.

EX: Wǒ xué yǔyán xuéde hěn màn, kěshi wǒ xuéde hěn hǎo.

C. Describe the location and furnishings of your room(s).

D. Tell your teacher the kind of activities that you engaged in after 3:30 p.m. and when you undertook them.

E. Explain to your teacher the kind of assistance/guidance/coaching that you wish to have from the FLTAs.

EX: Yīnwei wǒ kǎoshì lǎoshi (always) kǎobudào yībǎi fēn (point), suǒyì wǒ xīwàng tāmen néng duō bāng wǒ liànxí fāyīn hé yúfǎ.

F. Select one of your relatives and tell your class what he/she is most likely doing right now back home.

EX: Wōde yuèǔ dàgài/duobàn(r) zhèngzài shuǐzhe jiào ne.

wǒ	zūfù ¹ /yéye
	zǔmǔ ² /nǎinai
	lǎoye ³
	lǎolao ⁴
	fùqin/bàba
	mǔqin/mama
	shūshu
	shěnshe
	gūfu ⁵
	gūmǔ ⁶ /gūma
	gūgu ⁷
	jiùjiu ⁸
	jiùmǔ/jiùma ⁹
	yí ¹⁰
	gēge
	sǎozǐ ¹¹
jiějie	
jiěfu ¹²	
dìdì	
dìfù/dìmèi ¹³	
mèimei	
mèifu ¹⁴	
yuèfù ¹⁵	
yuèǔ ¹⁶	
etc.	

dàgài	zhèngzài	_____	-zhe	_____	ne.
duōbàn(r)					

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. zūfù | N: (paternal) grandfather |
| 2. zǔmǔ | N: (paternal) grandmother |
| 3. lǎoye | N: (maternal) grandfather |
| 4. lǎolao | N: (maternal) grandmother |
| 5. gūfu | N: husband of father's sister |
| 6. gūmǔ/gūma | N: father's sister (married) |
| 7. gūgu | N: father's sister (unmarried) |
| 8. jiùjiu | N: mother's brother |
| 9. jiùmǔ/jiùma | N: wife of mother's brother |
| 10. yí | N: mother's sister |
| 11. sǎozǐ | N: elder brother's wife |
| 12. jiěfu | N: elder sister's husband |
| 13. dìfù/dìmèi | N: younger brother's wife |
| 14. mèifu | N: younger sister's husband |
| 15. yuèfù | N: father-in-law |
| 16. yuèǔ | N: mother-in-law |

G. Tell your teacher what kind of magazine, zázhì, you read and how it got here.

EX: Wǒ kànde nàge zhōubào jiào Shídài Zázhi. Shì yòng píngxīn jīlaide.

H. Explain to your teacher why it's so important for you to understand or at least be aware of the Chinese culture.

EX: Wǒ néng liáojiě Zhōngguo wénhuà búdàn kényi bānzhi wǒ bǎ Zhōngwén xuéhǎo, yǐhou wǒ dào Dàlù qù lǚxíngde shíhou yě kényi gēn Zhōngguo rén jiāoliú jīngyàn.

I. Compare your present accommodations with your old home in terms of size (chícun), color (yánsè), convenience and livability.

EX: Wǒ xiànzài zhùde dìfang zhǐshi yìjiān dānrénfáng bǐ wǒ fùmǔde fángzi kě xiǎoduǒle. Wúzi de chícun dàgài yǒu 15 chǐ (ft= 1/3 meter) cháng, 15 chǐ kuān. Wúzi lǐtou hěn shūfu. Báitiān de shíhou hěn liàng. Qiáng de yánsè shì báide, fángzi wàimiànde shì huángde. Yǒu Kōngtiáode shèbèi, kěshi zhǐyǒu nuǎnqì, méiyǒu lěngqì. Zhège chéngde tiānqì (weather) hěn hǎo, bùxūgyào lěngqì. Wǒ lǎojiāde tiānqì bǐ zhèlǐ rè, yě bǐ zhèlǐ lěng.

J. Tell your teacher about the American system of tipping. Discuss such aspects as where, when, to whom and how much.

K. When you register in a hotel/motel, what information do you have to give? Why?

L. It costs 20¢ to send an ordinary letter right now. Do you remember when postage was 3¢? What was the cheapest mail (no post cards, please) you ever sent? How long ago was it?

M. Tell your teacher why the U.S.P.O. is always in the red
(chizi¹/péiqián²)?

N. Select and answer one of the following questions.

1. Shénme yàng(zì)de xīn dēi guàhào?
2. Nǐ yòngguo yóujiǎn ma? Rúguǒ yòngguo, shì jìdào nǎli qù de?
Shì jǐgěi shéide?
3. Shénme yàng(zi)de xīn/bāoguǒ dēi bǎojià?
4. Nǐ tiánguo bàoguānbiǎo ma? Yàoshi tiánguo, shì zài nǎli
tiánde? Nǐ fùle duōshao qiánde shuǐ?
5. Wèishénme hǎiguān yào jiǎnchá wǒmende xínglǐ?
6. Nǐde xīnzhǐ hé xíngfēng dōu shì zài nǎli mǎide? Duōshao
qián? Shì shénme yánsède? Hěn báo ma?
7. Nǐ zhùde dìfang yǒu yóuxiāng xīnxiāng ma? Yě yǒu yóutǒng
xìntǒng ma?
8. Yóudiyuán de gōngzuò shì shénme?

-
1. chizi
 2. péiqián

N: deficit (in red ink)
VO: lose money in business transactions

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

Activity 1

Role Playing

Work in pairs. While one of you role plays a Presidio post office employee, the other plays a customer. Then switch roles. Try to cover the following topics:

1. The cost of sending an ordinary letter.
2. The cost of sending an ordinary airmail (United States and overseas) letter.
3. The cost of sending an express letter (United States only).
4. The cost of sending by parcel post (United States only).
5. The cost of buying a money order (the maximum and the minimum amount per order).
6. The kinds of materials and /or illegal, bùhéfǎde, drugs unlawful to mail.

Activity 2

Discussion

Discuss the following topics with the class:

1. Is the cost of making a long-distance telephone call (in the United States) the same regardless of the company that you wish to do business with?
2. When is the best time to make a long-distance telephone call? Why is it cheaper on the weekends?
3. How many ways can we make long-distance telephone calls in the United States?
4. How do we find telephone numbers in a telephone directory?
5. Is the DLI Academic Directory very useful?

Activity 3

Role Playing

Work in pairs. While one of you role plays a real estate agent fángdìchǎnde jīngjìrén, the other plays a customer who is trying to rent a house. Then switch roles.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

Translation Exercise: Chinese-English

1. Xiǎo Zhào: (Over the phone) Wēi, nǐ shì huàwùyuán ma?
 2. Huàwùyuán: Shìde, nǐ yǒu shénme shì ma?
 3. XZ: Wǒ gānggāng bōle (dialed) yíge chángtú-diànhuà, kěshì jiēcuòle (was mistakenly connected) hàomǎ.
 4. H: Nǐ bōde shì shénme bàomǎ?
 5. XZ: Bālíngbā-sìjiǔyāo-jiǔbāqīliù. Nàbiān jiē diànhuà de rén shuō tāde hàomǎ shì sìjiǔyāo-jiǔbāqījiǔ.
 6. H: Nǐ bōcuòle ba.
 7. XZ: Wǒ méi bōcuò. Wǒ yòu bōle yíhuí, bōde hěn màn. Nàbiān háishi jiǔbāqījiǔ.
 8. H: Yěxǔ nǐde diànhuàjī xūyào xiūlǐ le. Búyào jīn. Wǒ xiěxiàlai le, nǐ gāngcái dǎ de nà liǎngge diànhuà wǒmen (diànhuà gōngsī) bù shǒu (diànhuà)fèi (We won't charge you for the two calls.).
 9. XZ: Qǐng nǐ tī wǒ jiào zhège chángtú diànhuà, xíngbùxíng?
 10. H: Xíng. Nǐ shì yào jiàorén-diànhuà ne, háishi yào jiàohào-diànhuà?
 11. X Z: Dōu kěyǐ. Wǒ yào zhǎo Wáng Dànián; búguò, tā rúguǒ búzài nàr, biérén gěi liú gè huà yě kěyǐ.
 12. H: Hǎo, nà jiù dǎ jiàohào-diànhuà ba. Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng. (after a while) Nàbiān méiyǒu rén jiē diànhuà.
 13. XZ: Shìbúshì zhànzhèxiàn le?
 14. H: Búshì. Shì méiyǒu rén jiē. Guò yíhuǐr nǐ zài dǎ ba.
 15. XZ: Hǎo, xièxie nǐ.
- [Gēn Xiǎo Zhào zhùzài yíge gōngyùli de Lǎo Chén huílai le. Xiǎo Zhào zhèng fàngxià diànhuà tīngtǒng (receiver).]
16. Lǎo Chén: Xiǎo Zhào, nǐ yòu dǎ chángtú-diànhuà le ba. Nǐ wèishénme bù děngdao zhōumò zài dǎ ne? Zhōumò piànyì yìdiǎnr.
 17. XZ: Wǒ méi dǎ tōng; guò yíhuǐr zài dǎ. Yǒu yìdiǎnr yào jīn de shì(qing), bùnéng děngdao zhōumò.

18. LC: Nǐde měi yíjiàn shìqing dōu yào jīn. Nǐ kànkàn wǒmen shàngge yuè de diànhuà fèi (phone expense) yǒu duōshao qián; hái méi fù ne.

19. XZ: Wǒ zhīdao, wǒ zhīdao. Chángtú-diànhuà dōu shì wǒ dǎ de, wǒ fù qián hǎobuhao?

20. LC: Zhè yě bùzhīshi qián de wèntí. Nǐ juéde měi yíjiàn shìqing dōu děi mǎshàng dǎ diànhuà, yàoburán jiù tài wǎn le, huòshì tài màn le.

21. XZ: Wǒ tài lǎn, bù xǐhuan xiěxìn. Wǒ xiě yí fēng xìn, yào xiě hěn jiǔ, rēng hěn duō zhāng xīnzǐ. Wǒ juéde shuōhuà róngyì de duō.

22. LC: Nǐ jìrán fù diànhuà fèi (telephone expense), nǐ jiù suǐbiàn dǎ chángtú diànhuà ba.

Translation Exercise: English-Chinese

23. XZ: Lao Chen, yesterday I put a small note here beside the telephone. Today I cannot find it. Have you seen it?
24. LC: I don't remember. What kind of a note?
25. XZ: A piece of yellow paper about five inches (cùn) long and three inches wide. There is a phone number on it.
26. LC: I did not pay attention to any small piece of yellow paper, but I tidied up that table and threw away some pieces of paper which I thought were useless.
27. XZ: Too bad. Probably you threw away my phone number.
28. LC: Whose phone number is it? You can find it in the phone directory.
29. XZ: No, not this one. It's Ma Mingli's phone number, and he just moved to another town.
30. LC: So, you want to call him long distance. You can find out his new number from the operator of that town.
31. XZ: No, it's too much trouble, and what I want to talk about is not that important. I'll write him a letter this time.
32. LC: You may send him a letter by special delivery, xiànshí-kuàixìn, or send a telegram.
33. XZ: OK, OK. (While talking, XZ puts his hand into his pocket.) Oh, look here! See what I found in my pocket; it's the note I have been looking for.
34. LC: That's good; otherwise I would feel sorry day and night, thinking that I threw away your most important message.
35. XZ: Now I should feel sorry for asking you about it. You'll think I am stupid to look for something which is in my pocket.
36. LC: I know you are stupid, but I didn't know you were that stupid!
37. XZ: Oh, well, let's forget the note. Do you think we need an extension in this apartment?
38. LC: Why? I seldom use the phone. It's all yours. Why do we need an extension?

39. XZ: I can put the extension in my room. Then when I make a phone call, you don't have to listen.

40. LC: You may take this phone to your room. I don't need it.

41. XZ: Fine, I'll do as you said. When you want to use it, just tell me.

LESSON 30

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- Yěbù ... yěbù ..., "neither ... nor...."
- The use of zhīhǎo, "the best thing is to...."



Tāmen diǎn cài.

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- Order a simple meal.
- Ask and answer questions about a sick child.
- Ask and answer questions about putting on and taking off certain items of clothing.

GLOSSARY



- | | | |
|------------------------|-------|---|
| 1. báizhǎnjī | 白斩鸡 | N: boiled chicken with mashed ginger and garlic sauce |
| jī | 鸡 | N: chicken (M: -zhī 只) |
| 2. biànfàn | 便饭 | N: a simple meal |
| 3. chuān | 穿 | V: to wear, to put on (clothes, jackets and shoes); to pierce through |
| 4. dāi | 呆 | V: to stay |
| 5. gèwèi | 各位 | PH: all of you (ladies and gentlemen) |
| 6. hǎoxiàng | 好象 | A: it seems that, a good deal like |
| xiàng | 象 | AV/SV: resemble/be alike |
| 7. hóngshāoròu | 红烧肉 | N: braised pork with brown sauce |
| a. hóngshāo | 红烧 | V: to braise with brown sauce |
| b. ròu | 肉 | N: meat |
| 8. jiēqià | 接洽 | V: to contact, to arrange, to take up a matter with |
| 9. jìnxíng | 进行 | V: to proceed, to engage in, to carry out |
| 10. jú | 局 | N: bureau, office |
| 11. kēxué | 科学 | N: science |
| 12. kū | 哭 | V: to cry, to weep |
| 13. lǎo(shì) | 老(是) | A: always |
| 14. pàng | 胖 | SV: be fat, be plump (Opp. of <u>shòu</u>) |
| 15. qīngdòu chǎoniúròu | 青豆炒牛肉 | N: beef sautéed with green peas |
| a. qīngdòu | 青豆 | N: green pea; green soya bean |
| b. chǎo | 炒 | V: to stir fry, to sauté |

c. niúròu	牛肉	N: beef
16. qīngzhēngyú	清蒸鱼	N: steamed fish (whole)
a. qīng	清	SV: be clear, be unmixed
b. zhēng	蒸	V: to steam
c. yú	鱼	N: fish
17. qǐngkè	请客	VO: to give a party (Lit. to invite guests)
18. rènwù	任务	N: mission, duty, assignment
19. shāngwù	商务	N: commercial or business affairs
20. shǎngguāng	赏光	SV/VO: thank or ask someone for the pleasure of his/her company
21. shàngyī	上衣	N: jacket
22. shòu	瘦	SV: be thin, be lean (Opp. of <u>pàng</u>)
23. sùshíjīn	素十锦	N: assorted vegetables
a. sù	素	N: vegetable (Opp. of meat)
b. jīn	锦	ADJ: be bright and beautiful
24. suānlàotāng	酸辣汤	N: hot and sour soup
a. suān	酸	SV: be sour
b. là	辣	SV: hot (peppery)
25. tuō	脱	V: to take off (clothes, shoes, and socks)
26. wàiguoren	外国人	N: foreigner
wàiguó	外国	N: foreign country
27. wánr	玩儿	V: to play, to have fun
28. wèn ... hǎo	问...好	IE: to inquire after someone's welfare
29. xiàng	向	CV/BF: towards

30. xiào 笑 V: to smile, to laugh, to laugh at
31. yěbù ... yěbù 也不...也不 A: neither ... nor
32. yībù 一步 NU/M: one step
33. yitiān dào wǎn 一天到晚 PH: from morning till night, all day long
34. yuǎnkè 远客 N: a guest from afar
35. zhǐhǎo 只好 A: the best thing is to ..., the only thing to do is ...
36. zhǔyàode 主要的 A: essentially, mainly
- zhǔyào 主要 SV: be essential, be main, be principal
37. zǒngcái 总裁 N: chairman (of the board, of a political party)

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



Qīngkè - Giving a Party

F: Fang Baoshan

D: Dawson

G1: Guest No. 1

G2: Guest No. 2

G3: Guest No. 3

(Fang invites the Dawsons and others to dinner at a restaurant)

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | F: (Upon seeing Mr. Dawson)
Dàoshen Xiānsheng, huānyíng,
huānyíng. Zěnmē nǐn fūren
méilái? | Welcome, welcome Mr. Dawson.
How come your wife didn't
come? |
| 2 | D: Zhēn duìbuqǐ. Wǒ tàitai
běnlái yào láide. Kěshi
háizi zhè liǎngtiān bìngle.
yě bùchī, yě bùwánr, yìtiān
dào wǎn lǎokù, yòu pà yíge-
ren dāizai lǚguǎn, suǒyì
wǒ tàitai zhīhǎo péizhe tā.
Zuótiān yèlì yíyè dōu méi
shuǐ. | I'm really sorry. My wife was
originally coming. But the
baby has been sick these (last)
two days, neither eats nor
plays, (and) all day long is
always crying. He's afraid to
stay in the hotel by himself,
so the only thing is for my
wife to stay with him. Last
night she didn't sleep all
night. |
| 3 | F: Háizimen yíbing zuò fùmǔ
de jiù mángle ... lái, lái,
lái wǒ gěi nǐ jièshào jiè-
shào zhè jǐwèi Zhōngguó
péngyou. Zhèwèi shì ...,
zhèwèi shì | As soon as the children are
sick, the parents are then
busy. Come, come I'll give
you an introduction to some
Chinese friends. This is ...,
this is.... |
| 4 | G1: (Upon hearing Dawson's
Chinese) Dàoshen Xiānsheng
shuōde pǔtōnghuà zhēn hǎo.
Tīng buchūlai shì wàiguoren
shuōde. | Mr. Dawson speaks the common
language very well. When (we)
listen, it doesn't seem like
a foreigner speaking. |
| 5 | D: Náli, náli. Wǒde fayin
hé yǔfǎ dōu bùxíng. Qǐng
gèwèi bié xiào. | Not at all, not at all. My
pronunciation and grammar are
impossible. Please, all of
you, don't laugh at me. |

Notes:

Qīngkè It is to be noted here that this term can be used only in the following ways:

As a Verb Object

Zhège xīngqī wǒ yào qīng
sāncì kè.

This week I want to give three parties.

As a Verb Phrase

Tā bùxǐhuan qīngkè.

He doesn't like to give parties.

It is incorrect to say that

*Wǒ yào gěi yíge qīngkè.

2 Yěbù ... yěbù ..., "neither ... nor" The element following each yěbù may be as simple as a verb, as in exchange 2, or as a verb phrase.

Tā yěbù chōuyān, yěbù
hējiǔ.

He neither smokes nor drinks.

Frame 2

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>6 F: (Seeing that everyone is seated and provided with a menu) Jīntiān shì biànfàn, suǒyǐ méi yùxiān dīngcài. Wǒmen xiànzai diǎn ba. Dàoshēn Xiānsheng, nǐ shì yuǎnkè, nǐ xiān diǎn.</p> | <p>Today it's a simple meal, so I haven't ordered the dishes in advance. Let's order now. Mr. Dawson, as the guest from afar, you order first.</p> |
| <p>7 D: Wǒ bǔhuì diǎn, qīng gèwèi diǎn ba.

(after the ritual of insisting and declining)</p> | <p>I can't order food. I'll let all of you order.</p> |
| <p>8 F: Ràng wǒ lái diǎn ba. Báizhǎnji, hóngshāoròu, qīngzhēngyú, qīngdòu chǎo-niúròu, sùshíjīn gēn yīwǎn suānlàotāng, hǎo bùhao?</p> | <p>Allow me to order. How about having boiled chicken with mashed ginger and garlic sauce, braised pork with brown sauce, steamed fish, beef sautéed with green peas, assorted vegetables, and a bowl of hot and sour soup?</p> |

Frame 2 (Continued)

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 9 | G1, G2 & D: Cài tài duōle, chībùliǎo. | That's too much; we couldn't eat all of that. |
| 10 | F: Nálì, bùduō. Dōu shì pǔtōngcài. Wǒmen dàiā dōu bǎ shàngyī tuōxiàliǎ ba. Chuānzhe chīfān bú-tài shūfu. | Not at all. It's not too much. It's all ordinary food. Let's all of us take off our jackets. Eating with your jacket on is not too comfortable. |

10 Tuō, as it is used in this Lesson, means "take off one's shoes, socks or clothes." However, for taking off one's glasses, hat or jewelry the verb zhāi is used. As a rule, tuō is the opposite of chuān, and zhāi is the opposite of dài. Note that for ceremonial usage and in certain Chinese dialects, the verb tuō is used for hats also.

Frame 3

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 11 | G2: Wǒ tīng Lǎo Fāng shuō nǐ dào Zhōngguó lái jiēqiǎ shāngwù, jìnxíngde hái hǎo ba? | I heard Old Fang say that you have come to China to arrange a business venture; you have made some progress, I suppose? |
| 12 | D: Hái kéyì. Wǒ zhǔyào de rènwù shì lái gēn Hángzhōu Kēxué Yīqì Gōngsī dīng hé-tóng. Yǐjīng tánde chàbù-duōle. Xiàxīngqī wǒ děi huí Měiguó qù jiàn wǒmende zǒngcái, xiàng tā bàogào. | It's OK. My main mission is to make a contract with the Hangzhou Scientific Instrument Company. We have pretty much concluded our talk. Next week, after I have returned to the United States, I will go see the chairman of my company to give him a report. |
| 13 | G2: Shénme shíhou zài huí-lai ne? | When will you be coming back again? |
| 14 | D: Liǎng-sānge yuè yǐhòu zài huí-lai. Nín zài nǎli fúwù? | I'll be coming back again after two or three months. Where do you work? |
| 15 | GS: (Gesturing towards G3) Wǒ gēn tā dōu zài Diànbào jú gōngzuò. | We work in the telegraph bureau. |

Frame 3 (Continued)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 16 F: (Seeing an opportunity to chat with Dawson) Dào-shēn Xiānsheng, zánmen liǎngge lǐbài méijiàn, nǐ hǎoxiàng <u>shòule</u> . | Mr. Dawson, in the past two weeks we haven't seen you; you seem (a bit) thinner. |
| 17 D: Shì ma? Nà wǒ tài gāoxingle. Wǒ děi gàosong wǒ tàitai. Tā cháng shuō wǒ dàole Zhōngguo yǐhòu, yìtiān bǐ yìtiān <u>pàng</u> . | Really? I'm very happy about that. I'll have to tell my wife. She often tells me that, after I get to China, day by day I get fatter. |

17 Wǒ yìtiān bǐ yìtiān pàng means, literally, "I one day compare one day fat." This sentence actually means that "I'm getting fatter day by day."

Frame 4

(Dinner is over; it's time for the guests to leave.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 18 G2: Lǎo Fāng, duōxiè, duōxiè
Wǒ děi xiān zǒu <u>yìbù</u> . | Old Fang, many thanks, many thanks. I have to take off first. |
| 19 F: Xièxie nǐ jīntiān lái <u>shǎngguāng</u> . | Thank you for the pleasure of your company today. |

对话

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | F: 道森先生, 欢迎, 欢迎。怎么您夫人没来? | Welcome, welcome Mr. Dawson. How come your wife didn't come? |
| 2 | D: 真对不起。我太太本来是要来的。可是孩子这两天病了, 也不吃、也不玩儿, 一天到晚老哭, 又怕一个人呆在旅馆, 所以我太太只好陪着他。昨天夜里一夜都没睡。 | I'm really sorry. My wife was originally coming. But the baby has been sick these (last) two days, neither eats nor plays, (and) all day long is always crying. He's afraid to stay in the hotel by himself, so the only thing is for my wife to stay with him. Last night she didn't sleep all night. |
| 3 | F: 孩子们一病做父母的就忙了……来, 来来我给你介绍介绍这几位中国朋友。这位是……, 这位是……。 | As soon as the children are sick, the parents are then busy. Come, come I'll give you an introduction to some Chinese friends. This is ..., this is.... |
| 4 | G1: 道森先生说的普通话真好。听不出来是外国人说的。 | Mr. Dawson speaks the common language very well. When (we) listen, it doesn't seem like a foreigner speaking. |
| 5 | D: 哪里, 哪里。我的发音和语法都不行。请各位别笑。 | Not at all, not at all. My pronunciation and grammar are impossible. Please, all of you, don't laugh at me. |

Frame 2

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | F: 今天是便饭, 所以没预先订菜。我们现在点吧。道森先生, 你是远客, 你先点吧。 | Today it's a simple meal, so I haven't ordered the dishes in advance. Let's order now. Mr. Dawson, as the guest from afar, you order first. |
| 7 | D: 我不会点, 请各位点吧。 | I can't order food. I'll let all of you order. |

Frame 2 (Continued)

(after the ritual of insisting and declining)

- 8 F: 让我来点吧。白斩鸡、红烧肉、清蒸鱼、青豆炒牛肉、素十锦跟一碗酸辣汤。好不好?
Allow me to order. How about having boiled chicken with mashed ginger and garlic sauce, braised pork with brown sauce, steamed fish, beef sautéed with green peas, assorted vegetables, and a bowl of hot and sour soup?
- 9 G1, G2 & D: 菜太多了; 吃不了。
That's too much; we couldn't eat all of that.
- 10 F: 哪里, 不多。都是普通菜。我们大家都把上衣脱下来吧。穿着上衣吃饭不大舒服。
Not at all. It's not too much. It's all ordinary food. Let's all of us take off our jackets. Eating with your jacket on is not too comfortable.

Frame 3

- 11 G2: 我听老方说你到中国来接洽商务, 进行得还好吧?
I heard Old Fang say that you have come to China to arrange a business venture; you have made some progress, I suppose?
- 12 D: 还可以。我主要的任务是来跟杭州科学仪器公司订合同。已经谈得差不多了。下星期我得回美国去见我们公司的总裁, 向他报告。
It's OK. My main mission is to make a contract with the Hangzhou Scientific Instrument Company. We have pretty much concluded our talk. Next week, after I have returned to the United States, I will go see the chairman of my company to give him a report.
- 13 G2: 什么时候再回来呢?
When will you be coming back again?
- 14 D: 两三个月以后再回来。您在哪里服务?
I'll be coming back again after two or three months. Where do you work?
- 15 G2: 我跟他都在电报局工作。
We work in the telegraph bureau.

Frame 3 (Continued)

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| 16 | F: 道森先生, 咱们两个礼拜没见, 你好象瘦了。 | Mr. Dawson, in the past two weeks we haven't seen you: you seem (a bit) thinner. |
| 17 | D: 是吗? 那我太高兴了。我得告诉我太太。她常说, 我到了中国以后, 一天比一天胖……。 | Really? I'm very happy about that. I'll have to tell my wife. She often tells me that, after I get to China, day by day I get fatter. |

Frame 4

(Dinner is over; it's time for the guests to leave)

- | | | |
|----|------------------------|---|
| 18 | G2: 老方, 多谢, 多谢。我得先走一步。 | Old Fang, many thanks, many thanks. I have to take off first. |
| 19 | F: 谢谢你今天来赏光。 | Thank you for the pleasure of your company today. |

SUMMARY



Frame 1

a. Qīngkè can be used as a VO(VP)

Xiàge xīngqī wǒ yào qīng Next week I want to give three
sāncì kè. parties.

b. The reduplicated adverb yěbu ... yěbu "neither ... nor ..."
is the negative of yě ... yě "either ... or ...," and like it,
can take either a single verb or VO (VP).

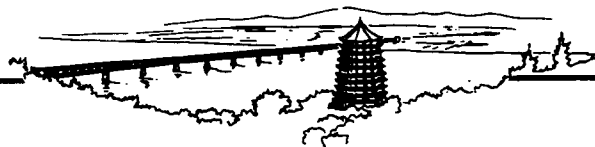
Tā yěbu kànbào, yěbu kànshū. He neither wants to read
 newspapers nor wants to
 read books.

Frame 3

Yìtiān bǐ yìtiān, "day by day," is used like an adverb.

Wǒ yìtiān bǐ yìtiān shòu. I am getting thinner day by
 day.

DRILLS I



A&B. Substitution. Substitute the underlined parts of the sentences with the words/phrases given in the columns.

1. Nàge yǒubīngde háizi lǎo kǔ, yìtiān dōu méi chī dōngxi.

a.

all night

slept

b.

throughout the journey

stopped

c.

all day and all night

slept

d.

two days

played

2. Zhège háizi yìtiān bǐ yìtiān gāo.

a.

thinner

b.

fatter

c.

stupider

d.

healthier

3. Niàn kēxué de xuésheng yìnián bǐ yìnián duō.

a.

Prices of houses

higher

b.

Airplane flight

more

c.

Foreign passengers

more

d.

Airplane service

better

4. Tā xué Zhōngwén xuéde hěn kuài, yìtiān bǐ yìtiān shuōde hǎo.

a.

writes better

b.

writes faster

5. Nàge lǎn hái zi yíge xīngqī dōu méi shàngxué.

a.	all day	washed his hands
b.	all week	took a bath
c.	all month	studied
d.	all year	tidied up his room

6. Nàge rén hěn xiǎoxīn, yìshēng (all his life) dōu méi zuòguo cuò shì(qīng).

a.	said anything wrong
b.	wrote a wrong word

C. Pairing. Fill in each blank with the appropriate word.

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| 1. Nàge yǒubìngde hái zi _____ le yìtiān-yíyè. | a. dīng |
| 2. Nà liǎngjiā gōngsī _____ le yíge wūniánde hétong. | b. jiēqià |
| 3. Wǒmen Zhōngwénxì xiànzài _____ xiě yítào xīn jiàokēshū. | c. kǔ |
| 4. Shànggeyuè Xiǎo Lǐ dàibiǎo tāmen gōngsī dào Shànghǎi qù _____ shāngwù. | d. jìnxíng |
| 5. Yíge lǐngshìde zhǔyào _____ shì shénme? | e. fúwù |
| 6. Nǐ zài Měiguó Guófángbù _____ le duōjiǔle? | f. rènwù |
| 7. Chūqu lǚxíng de lǚkèmen, shéi dōu búyuànyì _____ zài lǚguǎnli. | g. dāi |
| 8. Gāngcái wǒ kànjiàn Xiǎo Lǐ; tā _____ hěn bùgāoxíngde yàngzi. Wǒ méiwèn tā wèishénme. | h. zhǐhǎo |
| 9. Wǒ tàitai yíding yào kàn nàge diànyǐng; wǒ _____ gēn tā yíkuàir qù kàn. | i. hǎoxiàng |
| 10. Yíge gōngsīde _____ jiù gēn yíge xuéxiàode xiàozhǎng chàbuduō yíyàng. | j. zǒngcái |

D. Pairing. Fill in each blank with the appropriate word.

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. Zuótiān wǒmen zài yíge fànguǎn chí biànfàn, suǐbiàn _____ le yíge cài, yíge tāng. | a. yuǎnkè |
| 2. Wǒ yě qǐngle Xiǎo Lǐ. Tā shì běndì rén, búshì _____. | b. yùxiān |
| 3. Wǒmen dào le fànguǎn cái diǎn cài, méiyǒu _____ dīng cài. | c. diǎn |
| 4. Zhège hái zi búài niànshū, yìtiān dào wǎn _____ wánr. | d. lǎo |
| 5. Zhōumò tāmen chángchang dào chéngwài qu _____ | e. dāi |
| 6. Nǐ yīnggāi duō chūqu wánryiwánr, bù yīnggāi yíge rén lǎo _____ zài jiāli. | f. wánr |
| 7. Tā zhèci qù Shànghǎi _____ de rènwù shì bàn yíge diànrì zhǎnlǎnhuì. | g. kēxué |
| 8. Nàge rén yìtiān dào wǎn lǎo chí dōngxī, suǒyǐ tā yìtiān bǐ yìtiān _____. | h. zhǔyào |
| 9. Zhège nǚhái zi pà pàng, suǒyǐ lǎo bùchí dōngxī. Tā yìtiān bǐ yìtiān _____. | i. shòu |
| 10. Xiànzài xuéxiàoli zhǔyào de kēmù (subject[s]) dōu shì _____. | j. pàng |

E. Expansion. Add the additional information to each sentence.

- Nàge yǒubīng de hái zi lǎo kǔ.
from morning till night/all day long
- Wǒ liǎnggè yuè méi kànjian nǐ, nǐ shòule.
seemingly
- Tā yìtiān dào wǎn lǎo chí dōngxī, suǒyǐ pàng.
fatter each day
- Tā de rènwù shì lái gēn wǒmen gōngsī dīng hétóng.
main mission
- Tā bìngde hěn jiǔ, xiànzài bùnéng zǒu.
not even one step
- Tā hái yǒu yíge yuēhuì, suǒyǐ tā xiān zǒule.
one step/a little earlier

7. Nàge háizi pà dāizài lǚguǎnli.
by himself
8. Nàge háizi bīngle; tā fùmǔ dōu méi shuǐjiào.
all night
9. Tā dàibiǎo tāmen gōngsī lái kāihuì. Huíqū yǐhòu tā dǎi bào-
gào kāihuìde jīngguo.
to the president of the company
10. Zhèjiā hángkōng gōngsī de fēijī yìtiān bǐ yìtiān hǎo.
the service on their airplanes
- F. Expansion, Add the additional information to each sentence.
1. Tā dào Měiguó qù zuò yánjiù gōngzuò.
scientific research
2. Nà liǎngjiā gōngchǎng dīngle yíge héttóng.
five year's contract
3. Hěn duō xuésheng duì zhège wéntí dōu hěn zhùyì.
students who study sciences
4. Tāmen diǎnle sīge cài; shénme dōu yǒule.
chicken, fish, beef, pork
5. Tā dàibiǎo tāmen gōngsī lái jiēqià shāngwù.
the president of the company
6. Wǒ tàitai yíding yào qù mǎi dōngxi; wǒ jiù péi tā qùle.
reluctantly (the only thing to do)
7. Wǒmen yùbèi liǎngge rén dōu qù; hòulái háizi bīngle, jiù dōu méiqù.
originally/at first
8. Tā yìtiān dōu méishuohuà, búda gāoxíngde yàngzi.
seemingly
9. Nǐ háishi chuāng zhèjiàn yīfu qù ba. Rúguǒ guò yìhuìr tài
rè, kéyì tuōxiàlai.
this piece of heavy clothing
10. Tā shuō tā gāngcái niàn cuòle yíge zì.
but I didn't hear it

G. Completion. Fill in each blank with the appropriate word(s) from among those in parentheses.

1. Háizi yì bīng, fùmǔ jiù róngyì _____.
(zháojí, jīrán)
2. Nàge yǒubīngde háizi kǔle yìyè, suóyì tā fùmǔ _____ méi shuǐjiào.
(yìtiān, yìyè)
3. Nàge háizi bīngle wǒtiān; tā mǔqīn dāizai jiālì _____ le tā wǔtiān.
(péi, dāi)
4. Nǐ rúguǒ xiǎng kàn nàge diànyǐng, nǐ děi _____ mǎi piào, yīnwèi qù kànde rén tài duōle.
(yùxiān, yùbèi)
5. Wǒmen zhōumò qù kàn diànyǐng hǎo buhǎo? _____ jiù dào chéngwài qù wánr.
(yào bushì, yào burán)
6. Wǒ zhège érzi (son) _____ wǎnr, lǎo búniànshū.
(yìtiān dào wǎn, yìtiān bǐ yìtiān)
7. Nàge rén yìtiān dào wǎn chí dōngxì, suóyì tā _____ pàng.
(yìtiān bǐ yìtiān, yìtiān dào wǎn)
8. Nà liǎngjiā gōngsī gāng dīngle yíge xīn _____.
(rènwù, hétong)
9. Tāmen nàge xuéxiào _____ de kē mù (subjects) shì kēxué.
(zhǔyào, fúwù)
10. Nà liǎngjiā gōngsī zhèngzài tán yáncháng hétongde shìqing; yíqíe dōu _____ de hěn hǎo.
(yùxiān, jìnxíng)

H. Completion. Fill in each blank with the appropriate word(s) from among those in parentheses.

1. Wǒ _____ bùxiǎng qù lǚxíng; wǒ tàitai yíding jiào wǒ péi tā qù, hòulai wǒ qùle.
(běnlai, hǎoxiàng)
2. Wǒ bùxǐhuan kàndiànyǐng. Zuótiān wǒ érzi (son) yíding yào wǒ dài tā qù kàn nàge xiǎo háizide diànyǐng. Wǒ jiù _____ qùle.
(zuihǎo, zhíhǎo)
3. Wǒ zuì _____ jiālì yǒurén yǒubīng.
(pà, máng)

4. Wǒ xiànzài chuānde zhèjian yīfu tài hòule; wǒ děi bǎ tā xiàlai.
(ná, tuō)
5. Jīntiān hěn lěng; nǐ yīnggāi zài _____ shang yíjiàn hòu yīfu.
(chuān, tuō)
6. Wǒ yìnián méikànjian wǒ fùqin; tā _____ lǎode duōle.
(hǎoxiàng, zhíhǎo)
7. Tā jīntiān hěn bùgāoxìng. Nǐ _____ xiànzài bié qù zhǎo tā.
(zuǐhǎo, zhǐhǎo)
8. Nǐ yě bùnéng yìtiān dào wǎn _____ niànshū; yídìng yào xiū-xi xiūxi.
(lǎo, bu)
9. Nǐ bùnéng yìtiān dào wǎn lǎo _____ zài jiāli. Nǐ yīnggāi lái zhǎo wǒmen, gēn wǒmen yíkuàir chūqu wánwanr.
(zhù, dāi)
10. Wǒ _____ jiù bùxǐhuan tā. Hòulái wǒ zhīdao tā yǒu nàme duō máobìng, jiù gèng bùxǐhuan tā le.
(běnlai, zhǐhǎo)

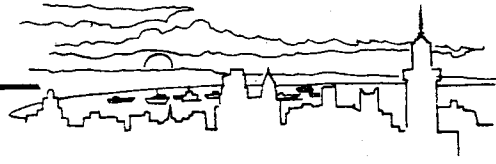
I. Correction. The underlined part of each sentence may or may not be wrong. Correct where necessary.

1. Bǐdé shuōde Zhōngwén zhēn hǎo, bùtīngchūlai shì Měiguórén shuōde.
2. Xiǎo Lǐ gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà; kāishǐde shíhou, wǒ tīngméichūlai shì tāde shēngyīn.
3. Wáng Xiáojiě huàde huàr zhēn hǎo, búkànchūlai shì gāng xuéle liǎngsāngèyuède rén huàde.
4. Zhèjǐge máobìzi xiěde zhēn hǎo; wǒ búkànchūlai shì shéi xiěde.
5. Dàmén wàibiānr yǒurén jiào nǐ; wǒ tīngméichūlai shì shéi.
6. Wǒ hǎoxiàng kànjianguo nàge hěn shòude rén, kěshi wǒ bùxiǎngqīlai tāde mángzi.
7. Hòulai wǒ xiǎngqīlai le, tāde míngzi shì Wáng Dànián.
8. Wǒ gāng pǎole sānlǐlù; xiànzài tài lèile, zhànbuqīlai le.
9. Tā bingle hǎojītiān, gānggang hǎole; suóyi tā hái bùzhànqīlai.
10. Zhège xiǎo háizi cái qǐgèyuè, jiù zhàndeqīlai le.

J. Correction. The underlined part of each sentence may or may not be wrong. Correct where necessary.

1. Tā zài diànhuàlǐde shēngyīn tài xiǎole, wǒ tīngméiqīngchū.
2. Hēibǎn (blackboard) shàngde zì tài xiǎole, wǒ zuòzài hòubiān kànméiqīngchū.
3. Tā zhànzài hěn yuǎnde dìfāng, wǒ búkànchūlai shì shéi.
4. Jiēshàngde rén hěn duō. Tā zài jiē nàbian jiào wǒ, wǒ tīngméijiàn.
5. Zhèshuāng xié de jiàqián tài gāo (high) le; wǒ bùmǎiqǐ.
6. Nàge lǎo xiānsheng chuānzhe hěn jiùde yīfu, kāizhe yībù hěn jiùde qìchē. Búguò, nǐ bié búkàngǐ tā; tā shì yíge dà gōngsī de zǒngcái.
7. Zhème dàde zhuōzi, wǒ yíge rén bùbānshàngqù.
8. Nàzhāng xiǎo zhuōzi wǒ bāndeshàngqù.
9. Zhème zhòng (heavy) de shǒutíngxiāng, wǒ bùnádòng.
10. Nàge xiǎo shǒutíngxiāng, nǐ yídìng nàdòng.

DRILLS II



A. Select one of the following questions to answer:

1. Nǐ shì cóng nǎge yíngqū (post) dào zhèli lái de?
2. Nǐ shì nǎtiān líkāi de? Shì jīyuè jīhào? Shì shàngwǔ háishi xiàwǔ?
3. Nǐ shì zěnmē lái de? Huā (spend) le duōshǎo qián?
4. Nǐ lái de shíhòu jīngguò le yìxiē shénme yǒumíng de dìfāng? Fēngjǐng (scenery) dōu hěn hǎokàn ma?
5. Míngnián nǐ shénme shíhòu cái kǎi bìyè (graduate)?
6. Bìyè yǐhòu nǐ jìhuà xiān dào nǎli qù?
7. Nǐ tuīyì (be discharged from military service) yǐhòu dǎsuàn hái jìxù niàn Zhōngwén ma?
8. Rúguǒ nǐ hái yào jìxù niàn, nǐ dǎsuàn dào nǎge dàxué qù niàn? Wèishénme dào nàge dàxué?

B. Select one of the following commands and use it in a statement.

1. Qǐlái!
2. Kuàichí!
3. Kuàizuòxià!
4. Géiwǒ!
5. Kuàizǒu!
6. Kuàiguòlái!

C. Describe your life at DLI.

EX: Wǒmēn de shēnghuó hěn jǐnzhāng. Zài zhège Yǔyán Xuéyuàn li zuò yíge xuésheng zhēn bùróngyi. Shàngkè de shíhòu búdàn bùnéng wǎnlái, yě bùnéng záo zǒu. Shí táng chī fàn de shíjiān yě yǒu yí dìng. Yǒu de shíhòu xiàkè yǐhòu wǒmen hái dēi màn pǎo (jogging). Yīnwèi xiào zhǎng xiǎng wǒmen dōu shì jūnrén.

D. Name a few of the language departments that we have at DLI.

E. Tell your classmates that one of your relatives, qīngqī, or friends is coming to see you soon.

EX: Wǒde zhīnǚ (niece) kuàiyào cóng Dàlù lái (kàn wǒ lái) le.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. zǔfù/yéye | N: (paternal) grandfather |
| 2. zǔmǔ/nǎinai | N: (paternal) grandmother |
| 3. lǎoye | N: (maternal) grandfather |
| 4. lǎolao | N: (maternal) grandmother |
| 5. gūfu | N: husband of father's sister |
| 6. gūmǔ/gūma | N: father's sister (married) |
| 7. gūgu | N: father's sister |
| 8. jiùjiù | N: mother's brother |
| 9. jiùmǔ/jiùmā | N: wife of mother's brother |
| 10. yí | N: mother's sister |
| 11. sāozi | N: elder brother's wife |
| 12. jiěfu | N: elder sister's husband |
| 13. dìfù/dìmèi | N: younger brother's wife |
| 14. mèifu | N: younger sister's husband |
| 15. yuèfù | N: father-in-law |
| 16. yuèmǔ | N: mother-in-law |

F. Select one of the following statements that you believe is a fair description of the way you perform a certain activity. If you don't find an appropriate one, make one up.

EX: Wǒ zǒulù* zǒude hěn màn, kěshi wǒ zǒude hěn duō.

	mǎi dōngxi	mǎi	duō,	yòng	shǎo.
	xiǎng shìqing	xiǎng	kuài,	shuō	màn.
	kāi qùchē	kāi	kuài,	kāi	hǎo.
	xué yǔyán	xué	màn,	xué	hǎo.
	shuǐjiào	shuǐ	wǎn,	qǐ	zǎo.
Wǒ	chīfàn	chī	de hěn duō,	kěshi wǒ chī	de hěn màn.
	qǐchuáng	qǐ	zǎo,	shuǐ	wǎn.
	kāi chuānghu	kāi	màn,	guān	kuài.
	xiǎng shìqing	xiǎng	màn,	shuō	kuài.
	xué yǔyán	xué	kuài,	shuō	màn.
	shuǐjiào	shuǐ	zǎo,	qǐ	wǎn.

* zǒulù

VO: walk/go on foot

G. Given below is a list of computerized services that a good travel agency usually provides. Tell your teacher what kind of service you like to have when you are planning a trip.

1. airline reservation
2. railway reservation
3. cruise, xúnyóu/hángqíng, reservation
4. bus charter, baōchē, reservation
5. group, tuántǐ, student tours information
6. AMTRAK reservation
7. free ticket delivery
8. visa, qiānzhèng service
9. hotel/motel/car reservations
10. insurance, bǎoxiǎn, service
11. low military fare information
12. honeymoon, dù mìyuè, trip reservation

H. What's the legal drinking age in your home state

1. for beer?
2. for (grape) wine, pútáojiǔ?
3. for whiskey, wēishìjǐ?

I. Xiànzài dōngxi dōu hěn guī, rizi hěn nánguò. Do you agree with this statement? Please explain.

J. Select one of the following questions to answer:

1. Nǐ dào le zhè li yǐ hòu wènguo fāngxiàng méi yǒu? Shì gēn jǐngchá (police) wèn de ma? wén fāngxiàng hěn róngyì, kě shì gěi fāngxiàng yě hěn róngyì ma?
2. Nǐ lǎo jiā lí zhè li hěn yuǎn ma? Jù lí yǒu duō shǎo yíng lǐ? Yào shì wǒ xiǎng qù, wǒ zěn me zǒu?
3. Zài báitiān nǐ zuì lèi de shíjiān shì jǐ diǎn zhōng?
4. Lǐngshìguǎn de gōngzuò shì shén me? Nǐ zài hǎiwài de (overseas) shíhou nǐ qù guo Měiguó de Lǐngshìguǎn ma?
5. Nǐ zuì xǐ huan chī shén me páizide (brand) qiǎokè lì táng? Shì nǎ jiā gōng sī zuò de?
6. Zán men zhè ge yíng qu (post) lǐ tou yǒu méi yǒu xiǎo chī diàn/xiǎo chī bù?

7. Nǐ kèyì bùkèyì bǎ Nánjīng zhège chéngshì (city) zài dìtúshàng zhīchūlai gěi nǐde tóngxuémen kànyikan?
8. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng zuò jìnkǒu hé chūkǒude/jìnkǒu māimai, nǐ xiǎng mài shénme Měiguó huò zuì hǎo?
9. Fùjīn yǒumíngde dìfāng nǐ qùguo jǐge?
10. Nǐ shì cóng Měiguó nǎibù láiide?
- | | |
|------------|-----------------|
| a. Dōngbù | f. Dōngběi (NE) |
| b. Xībù | g. Dōngnán (SE) |
| c. Nánbù | h. Xīběi (NW) |
| d. běibù | i. Xīnán (SW) |
| e. Zhōngbù | |

K. Select one of the following places/cities and give directions to it. Try to use lexical items like towards, straight on, intersection, turn, etc.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. Big Sur | 6. Pacific Grove |
| 2. Carmel | 7. Pebble Beach |
| 3. Carmel Valley | 8. Salinas |
| 4. Del Rey Oaks | 9. Sand City |
| 5. Marina | 10. Seaside |

L. Select one of the following questions to answer:

- Huàwùyuán de gōngzuò shì shénme?
- Nǐ zài gōnggòng diànhuàjiānli dǎguo chángtú diànhuà ma? Měi sānfēnzhōng dǎi gěi duōshao qián?
- Dǎ chángtú diànhuà de shíhou jiàorén hé jiàohàode jiàqián yíyàng ma? Nǎge piányi?
- Zhège yíngqūdelide diànhuàbù nǐ yòngguo méiyou? Nǐ zhīdao Zhōngwénxī de fēnjī hàomǎr ma? Nǐ sùshèlìde fēnjī hàomǎr shì duōshao hào?
- Diànzi jìsuànjī/diànnǎo kēxué hé gōngchéngshī zhè liǎngzhōng zhuānyè, nǎzhōng hǎo yídiǎnr? Wèishénme?
- Zhège zhōumò nǐ dǎsuàn chūmén ma? Rúguǒ nǐ chūmén, nǐ yào dào nǎli qù wánr?
- Nǐ dào le zhèli yǐhou shéi gěi nǐ láiguó xìn? Nǐ gěi shéi qùguo xìn?

8. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu yíjiàn hěn guǎide dōngxī, jiào/ràng nǐde hái zi/tàitai/zhàngfu (husband)/péngyou (gǎi)/rēngle, nǐ shēngqì (get angry) bùshēngqì?
9. Nǐ yíge lǐbài shàngjiē/jìnchéng jǐcì? Zài chénglǐ dōu zuòxiē shénme shì?
10. Rúguǒ nǐ búzhùzài sùshè, nǐ měiyuè dēi fù duōshao fángzǔ? Nǐ zhùde gōngyù/fángzi yíòng yǒu duōshao fāngchǐ (sq. ft.)?
11. Yàoshi zhège zhōumò nǐ xiǎng dào Big Sur qù kěshi lù bùtōng, nǐ zěnme bàn?
12. Nǐ kéyi bùkéyi bǎ nǐ xuéxide shíjiān yáncháng dào èrshíyíge yuè?
13. Nǐ qiān (sign) guo hétong ma? Shì wèile (for) shénme qiānde?
14. Nǐ zài jiēshang/chénglǐ yùjiàn (meet) guo lǎoshī méiyǒu? Rúguǒ méi yùjiànguo, nǐ yùjiànguo shéi?
15. Nǐ jǐde bùjǐde nǐ kǒudàirli dōu yǒuxiē shénme dōngxī? Yǒude shíhou nǐ méixiǎngdào nǐ kǒudàirli yǒu hěn duō qián ba?

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

Activity 1

Role Playing

Role play dinner guests with your classmates while one student role plays the organizer of a Chinese dinner party. Discuss when, where, what (to eat), types of beverage, how much (per person), etc. You may use the menu in Lesson 22 for reference.

Activity 2

Questions and Answers

Imagine that very shortly your class will travel to Taiwan and the PRC as business officials selling American products. Your understanding of Chinese social attitudes and manners will determine the success of your mission, so ask your teacher for the dos and don'ts of Chinese etiquette.

Activity 3

Learn by Doing

Procedure: Work in pairs and practice some of the social graces that you just learned.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. Chinese-English: Cover the Pinyin text below. Teacher: Randomly select students and read each paragraph/sentence twice with a short pause between readings. Student: Say aloud the English equivalent. (translate)

(Xiǎo Zhào hé Lǎo Chén dōu shì Měiguó xuésheng, dànshi tāmen xīhuan yòng Zhōngwén míngzi.)

1. XZ: Lǎo Chén, Wáng Xiānsheng zuótiān qīng nǐ qù chīfàn, yǒu shénme tèbiéde shì ma?
2. LC: Tā yǒu liǎngge péngyou cóng Zhōngguó lái; tāmen rènshi wǒ fùqīn, suǒyǐ zhǎo wǒ qù jiànjian.
3. XZ: Tāmen shì dào Měiguó lái wánr ma?
4. LC: Búshi, shì dàiibiǎo tāmen de gōngsī lái jiēqià shāngwù.
5. XZ: Tāmen de gōngsī shì zuò shénme mǎimai de?
6. LC: Shì mài kēxué yìqì de. Tāmen yào gēn zhèr yìjiā diànzǐ gōngsī dīng héttong.
7. XZ: Dīng hǎole ma?
8. LC: Hái méiyǒu ne, búguò tánde chàbuduōle.
9. XZ: Nǐmen zuótiān chīle xiē shénme cài?
10. LC: Chīde shì biànfàn, suǐbiàn diǎnle jǐge cài, dànshi dōu hěn hǎo chī.
11. XZ: Shì shéi diǎnde cài? Shì kèren, hái shì zhǔren (host)?
12. LC: Kèren tài kèqi, bùkěn diǎn cài. Hòulai zhǔren zìjǐ diǎnde.
13. XZ: Diǎnle jǐge shénme cài?
14. LC: Yìge báizhǎnji, yìge hóngshāoròu, yìge qīngzhēngyú, yìge sùshíjīn, yìge qīngdòu chǎoniúròu, hái yǒu yìge tāng.
15. XZ: Pèide hěn hǎo, jǐ, zhūròu (pork), niúròu, yú, qīngcài (vegetable) dōu yǒule. Wǒ zhème tīngzhe yǐjīng juéde yǒu yìdiǎnr è (hungry) le.
16. LC: Wáng Xiānsheng chángchang qù nàjiā fànguǎn, suǒyǐ tā zhīdào tāmen nǎ jǐyàng cài zuòde zuì hǎo.
17. XZ: Zuótiān tāmen shuōde Zhōngwén nǐ dōu tīngdǒngle méiyǒu?

18. LC: Wǒ xiǎng duōbàn dōu tīngdǒngle. Búguò yǒu yíge kèren shì Shànghǎiren, tā shuōde pǔtōnghuà zhēn bùróngyì dǒng.
19. XZ: Wǒ zài lùyīndàishàng tīngjiànguó Shànghǎihuà. Wǒ chàbùduō yíjù yě bùdǒng.
20. LC: Zuótiān zhège Shànghǎiren shuōde shì pǔtōnghuà.

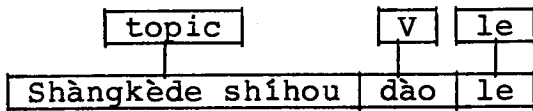
B. English-Chinese: Teacher: Sequentially assign sentences to each student. Student: First read the sentence carefully, then translate into Chinese. Concentrate on word-order, fluency, tones, and pronunciation.

1. XZ: Next weekend I'll have two friends visiting here. I think I'll take them to this restaurant for a Chinese meal. I hope you can go with me to order the same dishes you just told me (about).
2. LC: You can order them yourself. I don't want to go just to order the dishes for you.
3. XZ: I mean to invite you to join me and my friends.
4. LC: I don't know your friends. It won't be interesting to have dinner with some people you don't know.
5. XZ: You'll like them. Both of them come from China. One is an engineer doing research work here; the other is a businessman.
6. LC: Is the businessman also doing research work here?
7. XZ: His name is Li. Mr. Li is representing his company to negotiate with an American electronics factory here. They are about to conclude an agreement for five years.
8. LC: How do you come to know people of that kind?
9. XZ: They know my father, and my father told them I am studying Chinese here.
10. LC: Have you met them before?
11. XZ: No, not in person. But we have talked over the phone a couple of times.
12. LC: That's why you are always busy with the phone.
13. XZ: Not always.
14. LC: OK, almost always.
15. XZ: Would you go with me for the dinner? You can use your Chinese; it'll be a good opportunity to practice Chinese conversation.
16. LC: OK, I'll go with you. But I won't order the dishes. Why don't you let them order?

17. XZ: Yes, I'll ask them to do the ordering. But, in case we have to order too, please do it for me. I can't pronounce the names of those dishes.
18. LC: Don't worry. I'll write down the names in romanization for you. There are still several days to practice.
19. XZ: I am joking, shuozhewánr. It really doesn't matter that much.
20. LC: No, it doesn't. Not all Chinese people know all the names of dishes.

MODULE GRAMMAR SUMMARY

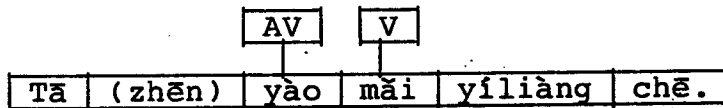
A. Action is up or about to start



1. Bàogàode shíhou dào le.
2. Sòngbàode shíhou dào le.
3. Kàn diànshide shíhou dào le.
4. Yòng diànnǎode shíhou dào le.

This is limited to stating that the beginning or end of some action or activity has been reached.

B. Auxiliary Verb (AV), Use and Position of



1. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan mǎi zhèizhī yuánzhūbī.
2. Tā zhēn ài kàn Měiguó bào.
3. Fāng Bǎolan búbǐ zuò zhōngfàn.
4. Tā hěn huì zuò Zhōngguó fàn.

C. Bǎ construction (This construction needs a complement after the verb, such as -le, a number-measure combination, a verb compound [Resultative Verb Compound-Actual], etc.)

1. Tā bǎ wǒde zìxíngchē màile.
2. Bǎ Dìsānkè zài kàn sāncì.
3. Qǐng nǐ bǎ wǒde shū dàihuí xuéxiào qu.
4. Bǎ péngyou qǐngdao nǐ jiāli lai.
5. Tā bǎ zhèixie qián jiāogěi wǒ le.

For further explanation see Lesson 22, note 10, and especially Lesson 25, note 14.

D. Borrow/Lend, Comparison of

a. ... gēn ... jiè (to borrow from)

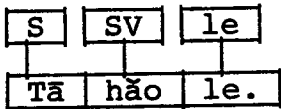
1. Shì gēn tā jiède.
2. Wǒ gēn tā jièle wǔmáo qián.

b. ... jiègěi... (to lend to)

1. Yíge péngyou jiègěi wǒle tāde chē.
2. Tā jiègěi wǒ wǔmáo qián

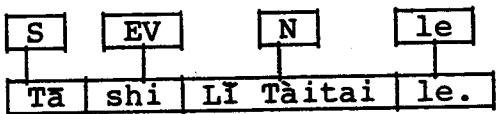
E. Change of status with le

a. Used with SV.



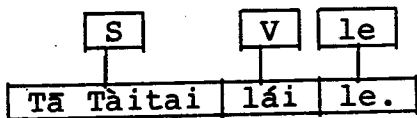
1. Zhèiba yīzi huàile.
2. Zhèige huódòng huànle.
3. Zhèixiē diànchí bútai xīnle.
4. Nèige jiémù xiànzài hěn yǒumíngle.

b. Used with EV.

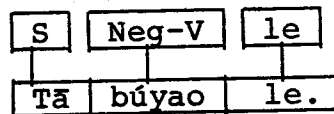


1. Tā búshì Sóng Tàitai le.
2. Tā shì Lǐ Shífù le.
3. Zhèi búshì tāde qìchē le.
4. Tā búshì xiǎoháizi le.

c. Used with V.



OR



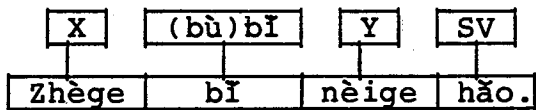
1. Tā xiànzài huì shuō Zhōngguó huà le.

2. Jīnnián tā méiyǒu qián le.

3. Wǒ huì kāi qìchē le.

F. Comparison

with bǐ:



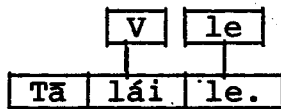
1. dānrénfáng bǐ shuāngrénfáng hǎode duō.

2. Nǐde yìsi bùbǐ wǒde hǎo.

3. Zuótiānde tiānqì bǐ jīntiānde tiānqì rède duō.

G. Completed Action

a. with le:



1. Tā mǎile yìshuāng búxié.

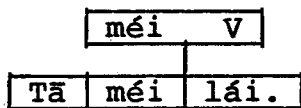
2. Tā huàle sìzhāng shānshuǐhuà.

3. Tā mǎile hěn duō dōngxi.

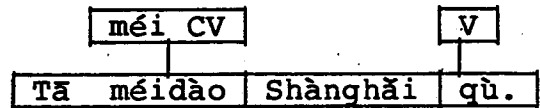
4. Fāng Xiānsheng yǐjīng qùle.

5. Tā dào Dézhōu qùle.

b. negation of completed action:



OR



1. Tā méi chīfàn.

2. Tā méicóng Shànghǎi lái.

3. Lǐ Xiānsheng méiqù.

4. Tā méizài yóujú gōngzuò.

5. Tā méi xiězì.

c. action still not completed:

S	hái méiV ne
Tā	hái méiqù ne.

1. Tā hái méichī fàn ne.
2. Tā hái méi dào Běijīng qù ne.
3. Tā hái méi xué xiězì ne.
4. Nèiběn shū hái méi chūbǎn ne.
5. Wǒ hái méi xué fántīzì ne.

d. double -le with simple unmeasured objects (or ...guò ... le) indicates completed action.

1. Tā chīle fàn le.
2. Tā chīguo fàn le.
3. Tā chīle fàn. OR Tā chīfànle. (Same meaning as above.)
4. Wǒ gēn tā tánle huà le.
5. Tā xièle xìn le.

Note: This should not be confused with the double -le pattern or the experiential -guò pattern.

H. Compound Sentences

a. to connect related ideas

búdàn ... yě ... (not only ... but also)

1. Tā búdàn huì yòng kuàizi, yě huì yòng dāochā.
2. Tā búdàn zài hē chá, yě ài hē kāfēi.
3. Tā búdàn huì qí zìxíngchē, yě huì qí mǎ.

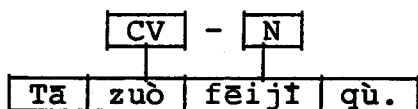
b. supposition yàoshi ... jiù

Conditional sentence	Main sentence
(Yàoshi) tā qù	wǒ jiù búqu.
Linking Adverb	

1. (Yàoshi) nǐ bùgěi wǒ qián, wǒ jiù bùgěi nǐ bàozhǐ.
2. Yàoshi tā zài nàr, jiù gěi tā fàn chī.
3. Nǐ yàoshi méi shì, jiù kéyǐ bāng wǒde máng.
4. Tā (yàoshi) hái méi lái, wǒmen jiù búnéng zǒu.

This is a compound Chinese sentence in which a condition is first set in a subordinate sentence, then resolved in the main sentence. In Chinese, the linking adverb jiù "then" is more important in that the yàoshi "if" can be left out. In English the opposite is more often true.

I. Co-verb construction



As shown by the example above, the Co-verb and its object precede the main verb.

a. Co-verb of conveyance, zuò, qí:

1. Tā qí zìxíngchē qù.
2. Tā zuò huǒchē dào Táizhōng qù.
3. Tā shì zuò fēijī láiide.

b. Co-verb of interest, gěi, tì, gēn, duì, yòng:

1. Wǒ gēn tā yíkuài qù.
2. Wǒ duì tā shuōhuà.
3. Měiguó rén yòng dāozǐ, chāzi chīfàn.
4. Zhōngguó rén búyòng shāor hētāng ma?
5. Liú Tàitai míngtiān tì Fāng Tàitai zhāodài dàibiǎo.

c. Co-verb of motion and direction, dào, cóng:

1. Nǐ dào diànqìchǎng qù.
2. Nǐ shì cóng nǎr láiide?
3. Wǒ yào dào Dōnghǎilóu Fànguǎnr qù chīfàn.

d. Co-verb of location zài used as setting for main action:

1. Wǒ gēge zài chénglǐtōu shàngxué.
2. Tāmen búzài nèige fàndiànli chīfàn.
3. Wǒ péngyou zài yóujú gōngzuò.
4. Tā zài nèige xuéxiào xuéxi.

e. Co-verb of direction, cháo wàng:

1. Nǐ wǎng nǎr zǒu?
2. Wǒ wàng běi yìzhí zǒu.
3. Wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi.
4. Cóng zhèli cháo yòu guǎi.
5. Búyào wàng nán guǎi.

f. Co-verb of separation (distance), lí:

1. Nǐ jiā lí xuéxiào hěn yuǎn.
2. Nánjīng lí Shànghǎi yuǎn bùyuǎn?
3. Chēzhàn lí xuéxiào hěn jìn.
4. Zhèr lí xiǎochīdiàn nǐyǒu jǐlǐ lù?
5. Tiānjīn lí Běijīng yǒu duōshao yīnglǐ?

g. Co-verb of agent, bèi, ràng, jiào:

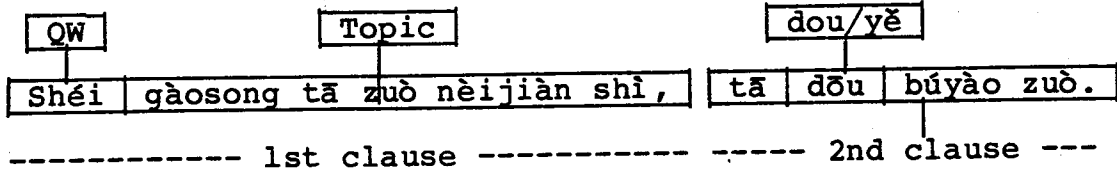
1. Táng bèi háizi dōu gěi chīle.
2. Qìchē ràng biérén jiěqùle.
3. Wǒde gāngbǐ jiào tā jièle.

But only bèi can be used without the agent (who the action was done by)

4. Neige chéng bèi jiěfàng le.

J. Dōu/yě

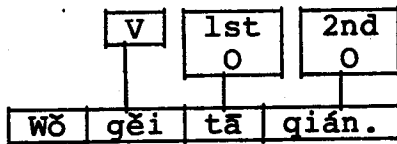
(See Inclusive and Exclusive)
Emphatic function of dōu/yě.



1. Qìchē chūle shénme máobing, tā dōu huì xiūlǐ.
2. Shūdiàn shénme shíhou kāimen, tā yě lái mǎi shū.
3. Shéi wèn tā wèntí, tā dōu bùnéng huídá.
4. Nǚgē guójiā chūde píjiǔ, wǒ dōu ài hē.

This is a compound sentence. When there is a question word in the first clause, the dou/yě in the second clause has an emphatic function.

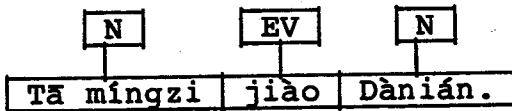
K. Double objects



1. Tā gěi wǒ yìběn shū.
2. Wǒ jiào tā Lǐ Xiānsheng.
3. Tāmen bùgěi wǒ qián.

In this type of structure, the first object in English would be called the indirect object and the second the direct object.

L. Equative Verbs (EV): shì, xìng, jiào



1. Tā xìng Mǎ. Tā míngzi jiào Mínglǐ ma? Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ ma?
2. Zhào Wǎnrú búshì zhèrde rén, tā shì nàrde rén.
3. Qǐngwèn, Bǎolán xìng shénme? Tā bú xìng Fāng ma?
4. Tā àiren búxìng Zhāng. Tā xìng Jiāng.
5. Máo Bǎolán de xiānsheng jiào shénme míngzi?

The equative verbs shì, xìng, and jiào act as equal signs (=) between nouns (N), pronouns (PN), or noun phrases (NP).

M. Exclusive

S	dōu/yě	bù-V
Shéi	dōu	bùzhīdao.

1. Tā shénme dōu bùzhīdao.
2. Wǒ shénme dōu búzuò.
3. Wǒde zìxíngchē méi shénme máobīng.
4. Tā shénme shū dōu bú ài kàn.
5. Zhèixiē pǐxié wǒ dōu búmai.

N. Guò, the Experiential Modifier

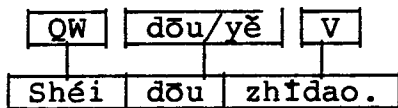
1. Nǐ chīguo Zhōngguo fàn méiyǒu?
2. Wǒ méichīguo Zhōngguo fàn.
3. Nǐ zài Rìběn zhùguo ma?
4. Wǒ méijiànguo Gāo Xiānsheng.
5. Nǐ yòngguo dāochā ma?

O. Imminent Action

ADJ	V	N	le
Kuài	dào	wǔdiǎn	le.

1. Tāde hái zi kuài hǎole.
2. Wǒmen kuài yào zǒule.
3. Wǒ jiù huíjiā le.
4. Lǐ Xiānsheng jiù láile.
5. Wǒmen jiù yào chīfan le.

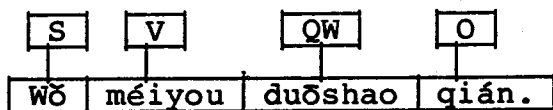
In this pattern there are a limited number of adverbs which imply immediacy such as kuài, yào, jiù.

P. Inclusive

1. Nǎr dōu xíng.
2. Jiù qìchē nǎr dōu yǒu.
3. Shéi dōu xǐhuan chī Zhōngguó fàn.
4. Něizhǒng píjiǔ wǒ dōu ài hē.
5. Něiběn shū dōu kéyǐ kàn.

Q. Indefinites

(question words as indefinites in negative statements)



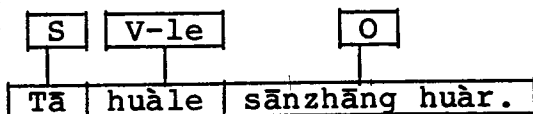
1. Wǒ méi shénme shū.
2. Wǒ méi gēn shéi shuōhuà.
3. Wǒ búniàn shénme.
4. Tā búgàosòng shéi.
5. Tā méichī shénme.

In sentences using this pattern, the meaning is somewhat ambiguous, the indefinite word implying "none (at all)" or "none (in particular)."

R. Le

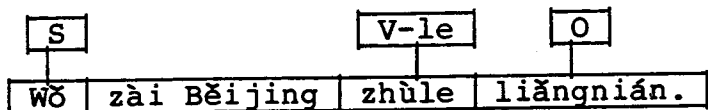
(See Completed action and Change of status.)

a. single le with measured object:



1. Wǒ qīngle liǎngge rén. Tāmen dōu shuō yào lái.
2. Wǒ niànle sānběn shū.

b. single le with Time Spent:

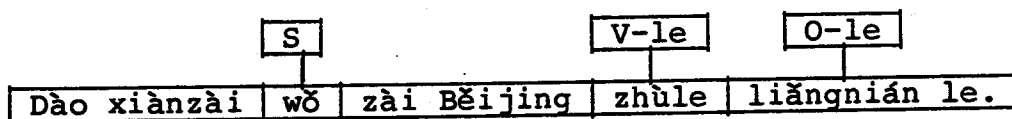


1. Wǒ xuéle liǎngge zhōngtóude Zhōngwén.
2. Qùnián wǒ zài zhèidong gōngyù zhùle sāngēyuè.
3. Shàngēyuè tā gōngzuòle liǎngge xīngqī.

c. Double le with Time Spent:

1. Wǒ yǐjīng xuéle liǎngge zhōngtóude Zhōngwén le.
2. Dào xiànzài wǒ zài yínháng gōngzuò le sīnián le.
3. Jīntiān tā xuéfile yīge zhōngtóu le.

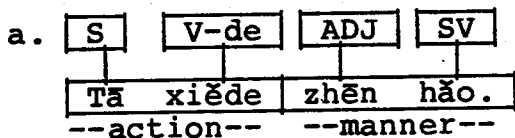
d. double le with Time Spent:



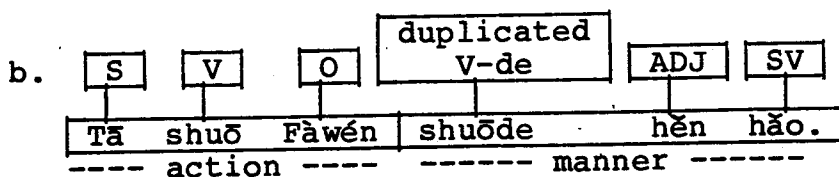
1. Wǒ yǐjīng xuéle liǎngge zhōngtóude Zhōngwén le.
2. Dào xiànzài wǒ zài yínháng gōngzuòle sīnián le.
3. Jīntiān tā xuéle yīge Zhōngtóu le.

S. Manner of Action

(Note the difference in pattern.)



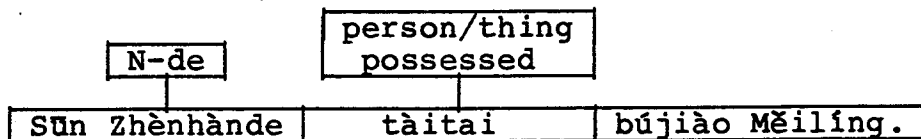
1. Tā chīde tài màn.
2. Tā kāide zhēn kuài.
3. Tā xuéde zuì kuài.



1. Tā shuōhuà shuōde hěn kuài.
2. Tā kāi qìchē kāide hěn màn.
3. Lǐ Tàitai zuò Zhōngguó fàn zuòde hěn hǎo.

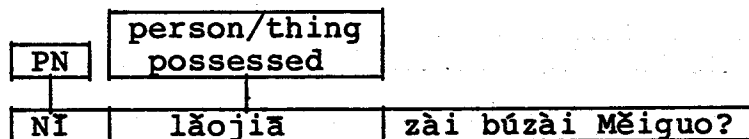
S. Modification of Nouns:

a. with -de:



1. Gāo Xiùfēngde xiānsheng shì Táiběi rén.
2. Lǐ Xiǎojiede míngzi jiào Bīngyíng.
3. Zhōu Qiǎoyúnde lǎojiā zài búzài Fùguó?

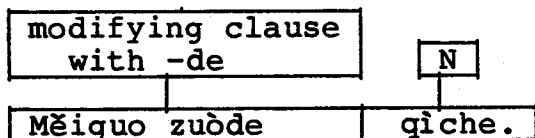
b. without -de:



1. Wǒ tàitai shì Yīngguó rén.
2. Tā xiānsheng míngzi jiào Guóguān ma?
3. Tāmen lǎojiā zài Zhōngguó Shāndōng búzài?

When a close relationship exists between the possessor and the possessed (as with xiānsheng, tàitai, àiren, lǎojiā, etc.), the marker -de is not used. However, if the possessor contains more than one word, -de is often attached to the last word of the possessor.

c. by clause with -de:

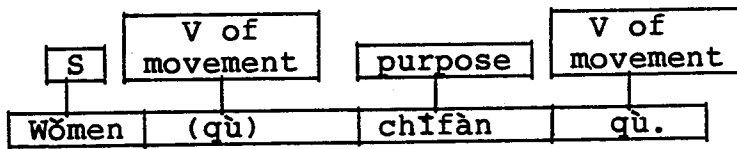


1. Yīngguó chūde zhuōzi.
2. Rìběn chūde xiǎo qìchē.
3. Lǐ Xiǎojie zuòde Zhōngguó fàn.

In certain, frequently used expressions where the noun modified is understood, the modifying phrase plus -de will itself become a noun, such as màibàode.

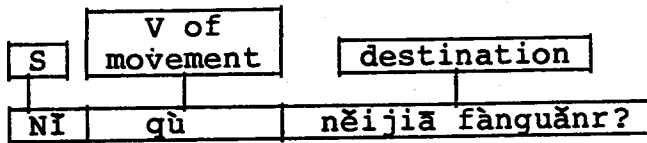
U. Movement patterns

a. double lái and qù:



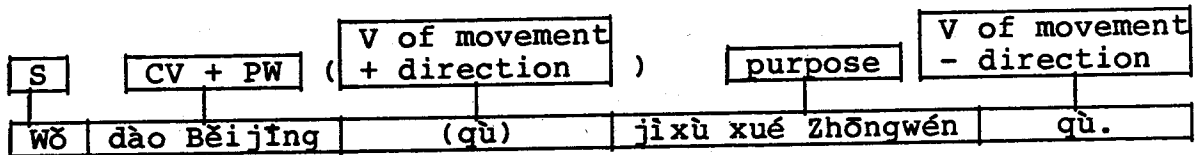
1. Wǒ dào xuéxiào kànshū qu.
2. Tā dào fànguǎnr qù gōngzuò qu.
3. Tā yào dào Fàguo lái hē Fàguo jiǔ lái.

b. single lái and qù:



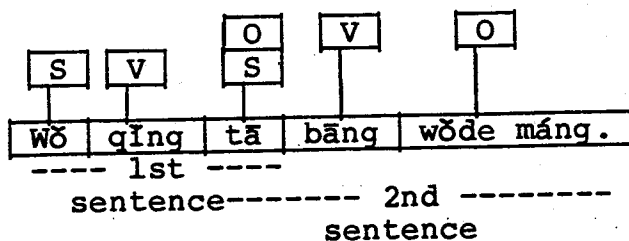
1. Wǒ lái chénglitou.
2. Tā qù nàige xuéxiào.

c. with the CV-verb of movement and direction:



1. Tā cóng Měiguó dào Déguó qù.
2. Wǒ zuò huǒchē cóng Táizhōng lái.
3. Tā cóng Měiguó lái xué Déwén lái.

V. Pivotal sentences using qǐng, jiào and ràng

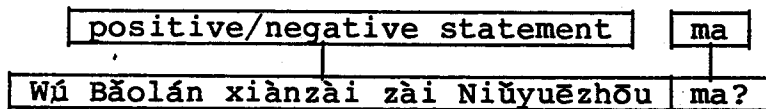


1. Nǐ ràng Lǎo Chén jiǎnchá jiǎnchá.
2. Qǐng tā zuò diǎnr shì.
3. Wǒ jiào tā lái chīfàn.
4. Tā ràng wǒ yòng tāmen de diànnǎo.
5. Zuótiān tā qǐng wǒ kàn tā xīnde diànshì.

The pivotal construction sentence is distinctive in that a noun clause is simultaneously the direct object of the first verb and the subject of the second.

W. Question patterns

- a. simple question with ma:

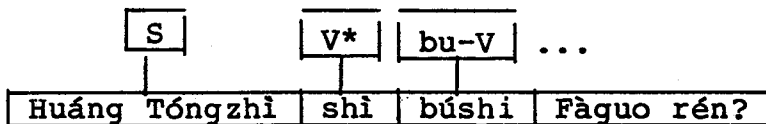


- b. using Question Words, i.e. shéi, shénme, něiguo:

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1. <u>Shéi</u> shì Hú Měilíng?	Wǒ shì Hú Měilíng.
2. <u>Shéi</u> jiào Mǎ Mínglǐ?	Wǒ jiào Mǎ Mínglǐ.
3. Tā shì <u>shéi</u> ?	Tā shì <u>wǒ xiānsheng</u> .
4. Nǐ xìng <u>shénme</u> ?	Wǒ xìng <u>Mǎdīng</u> .
5. Wáng Tàitai jiào <u>shénme</u> míngzi?	Tā jiào <u>Měilǐ</u> .
6. Nǐ shì <u>něiguo</u> rén?	Wǒ shì <u>Fàguo</u> rén.
7. Tā àiren shì <u>nǎrde</u> rén?	Tā shì <u>Jiāzhōu</u> rén.

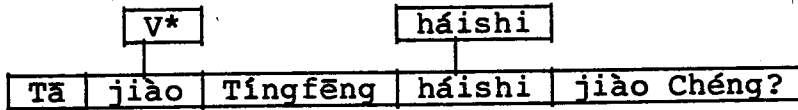
Notice that the position of the Question Word in the question is the same as its replacement in the answer. In other words, the word order remains the same.

- c. Choice type of question:



1. Huáng Xiǎojié zài nǎr? Tā zài Déguo búzài?

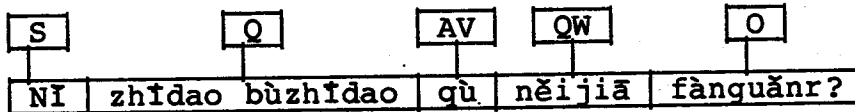
2. Niūyuēshì zài búzài Niūyuēzhōu?
 3. Qīngwèn, tā shì búshì Sīmǎ Xiānsheng?
 4. Nímende Yuènnán xiānsheng hǎo bùhao?
 5. Lǐ Tóngzhì, nǐ àirén shì búshì Huáng Yùzhēn?
- d. some Choice-type questions with háishi:



1. Nǐ shì Táng Měilì Tàitai háishi Fāng Měilíng Xiáojie?
2. Tā zài Měiguó Dézhōu háishi zài Jiānádá Àndàlüè?
3. Tā xiānsheng jiào Yōngpíng háishi (jiào) Shìyǐng?
4. Tāmen lǎojiā zài Běijīng háishi zài Shànghǎi?
5. Nín guīxìng? Nín xìng Hú háishi xìng Wú?

* The verb can be any type of verb.

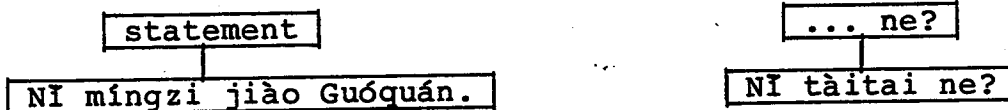
e. question inside a question:



1. Nǐ zhīdao tā shì něiguó rén ma?
2. Nǐ zhīdao tā chī shénme ma?
3. Nǐ zhīdao bùzhīdao tā zhù zài nǎr?

One of the question elements will be a QW, while the second element can be varied such as choice-type or use of ma.

f. abbreviated questions:

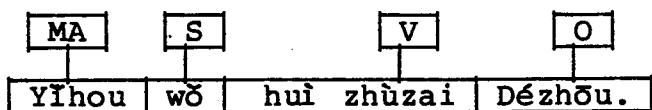


1. Zhāng Xiáojie xiànzài zài Shànghǎi. Nǐ tàitai ne?
2. Wǒ àirén jiào Sòng Zīyàn. Nǐ àiren ne?
3. Wǒ shì Jiānádà rén. Nǐ ne?
4. Zhōu Mǐnshēngde lǎojiā zài Nánjīng. Nǐ lǎojiā ne?

After a statement, an abbreviated question can be formed with ne. It has the equivalent of the English "What about ...?"

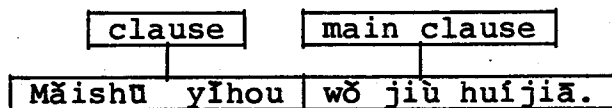
X. Relative Time patterns

- a. General Relative Time with the MAs yīqián or cóngqián, and yǐhou



1. Nǐ yīqián zài nǎr gōngzuò?
2. Cóngqián wǒ bùxǐhuan niànshū.
3. Tā yǐhou huì hěn yǒu qián.

- b. Specific Relative Time ... yīqián, ... yǐhou, and ... de shíhou



1. Wǒmen shàngkède shíhou děi yòng Zhōngwén shuōhuà
2. Tāmen xiàkè yǐhou děi xiūxi xiūxi.
3. Wǒ sīnián yīqián búzai zhèr gōngzuò.

Note: The specific Relative Time clause can be considered a conditional clause modifying the main clause.

Y. Resultative Verb Compounds (Consists of two verbs. The first is the action and the second is the result or extension of the action.)

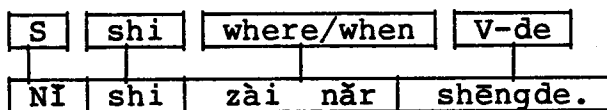
- a. Actual (two possibilities: one positive, the other negative.)

1. Nǐ kànjiànle ma?
2. Nǐ chīwánle méiyǒu?
3. Qìchē yùbei hǎole ma?
4. Zhèifēng xīn hái méi shōudào.
5. Tā bǎ qìchē mǎidaole.

b. Potential (Characterized by use of the infixes -de- and -bu-.)

1. Lítou yǒu rén shuōhuà, wǒ tīngbudǒng.
2. Yīyuàn hěn guì, wǒ xiǎng zhùbuqǐ.
3. Yàoshi wǒ yòng Rìběn huà shuō, nǐ tīngdedǒng tīngbudǒng?
4. Tāmen mǎibuqǐ xīn qìchē.
5. Nǐ shì chīdebǎo, háishi chībubǎo ne?

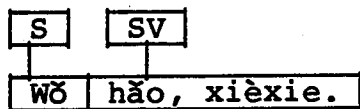
2. Shi...de construction



1. Wǒ shì zài Měiguó shēngde. (where)
2. Wǒ shì zài yóujú gōngzuòde. (where)
3. Wǒ shì zuò huǒchē qùde. (how)
4. Tā shì zài nèinián shēngde? (when)
5. Tā shì zuò mǎimaide. (why)

The shi...de construction is used here to stress various circumstances connected with the action of the verb (here to answer the questions of where and when). This construction can also be used to focus attention on where, how and why.

AA. Stative Verbs



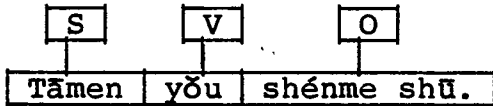
1. Nǐmen hǎo ma? Wǒmen hǎo, xièxie. Nǐ ne?
2. Tā hěn búkèqì.
3. Zhéibu jīqì huàile.
4. Zhèizhāng zhuōzi búdà.

In general, stative verbs are equivalent to the English "to be + adjective."

AB. Subject-verb-object pattern

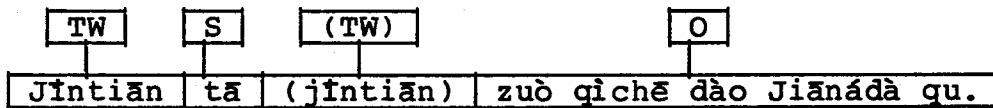


Also



1. Wǒ kàn Měiguó bào.
2. Tā zuò Zhōngguó fàn.
3. Wǒ yǒu hěnduō shū.

AC. Time When construction



1. Zuótiān wǒ dào chéngwàitou qù.
2. Tā míngtiān lái xuéxiào.
3. Míngtiān wǒ yào mài wǒde qìchē.
4. Jīntiān tā yào chī Zhōngguó fàn.

The Time Word comes before the main verb and either before or after the subject.

AD. Transposed Object



1. Shū, bào wǒ dōu kàn.
2. Yīngwén, Zhōngwén tāmen dōu xué.
3. Zhōngcān, Xīcān wǒ dōu xiǎng hěn hǎo.
4. Dēng, shūzhuōzi, wǒ dōu děi mǎi.

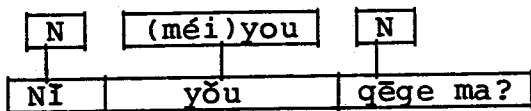
In this type of sentence, the dōu refers to the transposed objects.

AE. Yi ... jiù (as soon as) pattern

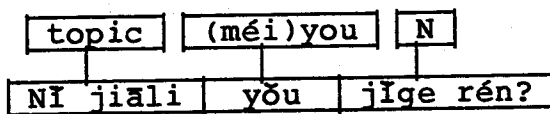
1. Tā yì tīnghuo tāde péngyou lái, jiù qù kàn tā.
2. Tā yì gěi wǒ qián, wǒ jiù yào chūqu.
3. Tā yì kànjian wǒ, jiù guānshang mén.

AF. Use and positioning of yǒu

a. possessive use of yǒu:

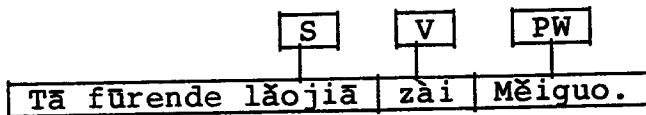


1. Nǐ yǒu hái zi ma?
2. Wǒmen yǒu liǎngge hái zi.
3. Wǒ méiyǒu gēge.

b. impersonal use of yǒu:

1. Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?
2. Yǒu wǒ gēn wǒ tàitai.
3. Chéngli yǒu méiyǒu xuéxiào?

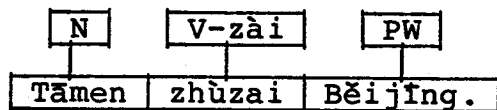
Yǒu in the last three sentences is usually translated as "there is."

AG. Subject-Verb-Place Word zàia. zài as main verb:

1. Lǐ Tóngzhì àiren xiànzài búzài Dézhou, zài Jiāzhou.
2. Mǎ Tàitai, nǐ xiānsheng lǎojiā zài nǎr?
3. Tāmen búzài zhèr. Tā zài Yuènnán. Tā àiren zài Rìběn.

4. Āndàilüè búzài Zhōngguo, zài Jiānádà.

When zài is used as the main verb (V), it is equivalent to the English "to be in/on/at," and indicates that the Place Word is the location of the subject.

b. zài as a verb suffix:

1. Nǐ zhùzai xuéxiào qiántou ma?
2. Zhèige xuésheng zhùzai tā péngyou jiā.
3. Tā péngyou zhùzai chéngwàitou.

When zài is used as a verbal suffix, it connects the action to the place the same as in English.

c. zài used as a Co-verb to set up main action:

(See Co-verb of location.)

AH. Zhe, a Verbal Suffixa. indicating progressive action (sometimes used with [zhèngzài ... ne]).

1. Tā chīzhe fàn ne.
2. Tā zhèngzai chīzhe fàn ne.
3. Tā tīngzhe lùyīn ne.

b. indicating existence.

1. Qiángshang guàzhe yíge guóqí.
2. Zhuōzishang fàngzhe hěn duō shū.

c. indicating adverbial function.

1. Tā shì zǒuzhe láide. (showing body position)
2. Tā zài kètīng zuòzhe.
3. Tā shuōzhe huà kāichē. (showing the manner in which action is carried out.)
4. Tā kànzhe bào chīfan.

CHINESE BASIC COURSE

MODULE 5
GLOSSARY

Alāsījiā	N: Alaska	L27
aīya	N: exclamation, interjection	L29
báizhǎnjī	N: boiled chicken with mashed ginger and garlic sauce	L30
bānjī	N: scheduled flight/air service	L27
bān	V: to move	L27
bānjiā	VO: to move one's residence	L27
bāngzhù	V/N: to help/assistance	L28
bàng	N: pound	L27
bāo/guǒ	V: to wrap	L28
bāoguǒ	N: parcel, parcel post	L28
báo	SV: be thin, be light (wine)	L28
bǎojià (bǎoxiǎn)	VO/N: to insure/insurance	L28
Bǎoluó Mǎdīng	N: Paul Martin (transliteration)	L25
bàoguān	VO: making a customs declaration	L28
bàoguānbiǎo	N: customs declaration form	L28
Běi Měi(zhōu)	N: North America	L27
bèi	CV: by (passive voice marker)	L27
běndì	PW: local, native	L29
bèn	SV: be stupid, be clumsy, be awkward	L29
bǐ	CV: compare with, than	L25
Bǐdé Bèiěr	N: Peter Bayer (transliteration)	L25
biànfàn	N: a simple meal	L30
bǐngqiě	MA: moreover	L28
búdà	A: not very	L25
bùfāng	A: might as well	L26
búxiè	IE: Don't mention it. (Lit. You need not thank me.)	L25
bǔ	N: to make up for, to mend, to patch	L27
bù	M: section, zone, part	L26
bù	N: book (for taking notes, keeping accounts)	L29
bùzi	N: notebook	L29
cānchē	N: dining car	L27
cháng	SV: be long	L26
chángtú	N: long distance	L29
chǎng	N: factory, mill, plant, yard	L29
chāo	V: to exceed, to surpass	L27
chāozhòng	SV: to overload, be overweight	L27
cháo	CV: facing, towards	L25
chǎo	V: to stir fry, to sauté	L30
chī	M: a Chinese foot	L29

chūkǒu	N: exports, exits	L29
chūkǒukē	N: export section	L29
chūmén	VO: to go out (of the town)	L29
chūzū-qìchē	N: taxicab (PRC)	L26
chuān	V: to wear, to put on (clothes, jackets and shoes), to pierce through	L30
chuāngkǒu(r)	N: window, ticket window	L28
dǎkāi	V: to open up, to turn on	L25
dǎsuàn	V: to plan to	L25
dǎtíng	V: to inquire or ask about	L26
dàgài	MA: probably	L25
dàmén	N: front entrance/door/gate	L26
dāi	V: to stay	L30
dānchéngpiào	N: one-way ticket	L27
dānrénfáng	N: room for one person	L25
dānzi	N: list, form	L28
dànshi	MA: but, yet, nevertheless	L27
dāngzhōng	PW: the center of, middle of, in between, among	L26
dēngjì	V: to register, to check in	L25
dēngjìbù	N: register	L29
dī	SV: be low	L29
dīxià	N: underneath, below	L25
diànbào	N: telegraph	L25
diànhuàbù	N: telephone directory	L29
diànzǐchǎng	N: electronics factory	L29
dìng	V: to fix, to set, to book, to subscribe	L25
Dōngjīng	N: Tokyo (Lit. Eastern Capital)	L27
duǎn	SV: be short	L26
fázi	N: way, method	L25
fāngbiàn	SV: be convenient	L27
fāngxiàng	N: direction	L26
fángzi	N: house (M: -suǒr, -dòng)	L29
fángzū	N: rent (for a house, flat, etc.)	L29
fèi	V: to waste	L27
fèixīn	IE/VO: May I trouble you (to do something)., Would you mind (doing something). /to give a lot of care, to take a lot of trouble	L27
fēnjī	N: telephone extension	L29
fēngjǐng	N: scenery	L27
fúwùtái	N: service desk/counter	L26
fù	V: to pay	L28
fùjìn	N: nearby, in the vicinity of	L26

gèwèi	PH: all of you (ladies and gentlemen)	L30
gèng	A: still more, even	L25
gōngchéngshī	N: engineer	L29
gōngdao	SV: be fair, be just, be reasonable	L25
gōnggòng diànhuàjiān	N: public telephone booth (or box)	L29
gōnggòng-qìchē	N: public bus (M: -liàng)	L26
gōngsī	N: company, corporation	L29
guàhào	V/N: to register/registration	L28
guǎi	V: to turn	L26
guòbàng	V: to weigh (on the scales)	L27
guòdào	N: aisle, passageway, corridor	L27
hǎi	N: sea	L26
hǎiguān	N: customs, custom house	L28
Hángzhōu	N: Hangzhou (name of a famous city)	L27
hǎoxiàng	A: it seems that, a good deal like	L30
hétóng	N: contract	L29
Héběi	N: (a province in North China)	L29
hēi	SV: be black, be dark	L25
hóngshāo	V: to braise with brown sauce	L30
hóngshāoròu	N: braised pork with brown sauce	L30
hòu	SV: thick, rich or strong (wine)	L28
hòujīshì	N: airport waiting room	L27
hùzhào	N: passport	L25
huāpíng	N: flower vase	L28
huàwùyuán	N: telephone operator	L29
Huáihǎi	N: name of a street	L26
huáng	SV: be yellow	L25
huíguó	VO: to return to one's native country	L27
huítiáo	N: receipt	L28
huò	N: goods, commodities	L26
ji	N: chicken (M: -zhī)	L30
jīchéngchē	N: taxicab (Taiwan)	L26
jīrán	MA: since, now that	L28
jiàqián	N: price	L29
jiào/ràng ... (gěi)	CV: by (agent marker)	L29
jiàohào	VO: to call; calling for a phone number, to call station to station	L29
jiàorén	VO: to call person to person (phone call)	L29
jiàokēshū	N: textbook	L28
jiēqià	V: to contact, to arrange, to take up a matter with	L30
jiézhàng	VO: to settle an account, to check out (of a hotel)	L25
jīn	SV: be bright and beautiful	L30
jìn	SV: be near	L26

jìnxíng	V: to proceed, to engage in, to carry out	L30
jìnchéng	VO: to go into the city or town	L29
jìnchūkǒu	N: imports and exports; entrances and exits	L29
jìnkǒu	N: imports, entrances	L29
jīngjì	N: economy, economics	L27
jīngjìzuòr	N: economy seat	L27
jǐushì ... yě	MA: even if ... nevertheless	L26
jú	N: bureau, office	L30
jùlí	N: distance	L26
kāiháng	V/VO: to set sail; to become open for navigation	L27
kào	V: near, by; to rely on/to lean against	L27
kē	N: section (a subdivision of an administrative unit)	L29
kēxué	N: science	L30
kě	A: indeed	L25
kōngqì tiáojiéqì	N: air conditioner	L25
kǒngpà	A: be afraid that, probably	L25
kǒudàir	N: pocket	L29
kū	V: to cry, to weep	L30
kuān	SV/N: be wide, be broad; width	L29
là	SV: be hot (peppery)	L30
lái	V: to send, to call	L29
láidejǐ	RV: There is enough time.	L28
láihuǐpiào	N: round-trip ticket	L27
lán	SV: be blue	L25
lǎn	SV: be lazy	L26
lǎo(shì)	A: always	L30
lèi	SV: be tired	L26
lěng	SV: be cold	L25
lěngqì	N: air conditioning (cold air)	L25
lí	CV: from (be separated from)	L26
lǐ	M: a Chinese mile (1/3 mile)	L26
lǐhài	SV: be fierce, be terrible, be severe	L25
liàng	SV: be light or be bright (Opp. of dark)	L25
-liǎo	RVE: shows capability for doing and/or carrying through to completion (the ending -liǎo appears only in the potential type.)	L26
língqián	N: small change	L27
língshì	N: consul	L26
língshìguǎn	N: consulate	L26
liú	V: to keep, to set aside, to detain, to save	L27

lǚguǎn	N: hotel	L25
lǚkè	N: traveler, passenger	L27
lù	N/M: road/route	L26
lùkǒur	N: intersection, crossing	L26
lùshang	PW/A: on the road/en route	L27
luòshí	V: to confirm, to make sure, to carry out, to fulfill	L27
mǎn	SV/V: be full, be packed/to fill	L25
méixiǎngdào	RV/IE: didn't expect/unexpected	L29
měijīn	N: American currency (Lit. American gold)	L29
méngtīng	N: entrance hall, lobby	L27
mínháng/mínyòng hángkōng	N: civil aviation	L27
názōu	V: to take (it) away	L27
Nán Měi (zhōu)	N: South America	L27
Nánjīng	N: Nanking	L26
niúròu	N: beef	L30
nuǎnqì	N: central heating (warm air)	L25
pà	V: to fear	L25
pángbiān(r)	N: side	L26
pàng	SV: be fat, be plump (Opp. of <u>shòu</u>)	L30
pǎo	V: to run, to run away	L28
qǐfēi	V: to take off (plane)	L27
qiánjǐtiān	N: a few days ago	L25
qiányìtiān	MA/N: the day before	L27
qiǎokèlì	N: chocolate	L26
qīngdòu	N: green pea; green soya bean	L30
qīngdòu chǎoniúròu	N: beef sauteed with green peas	L30
qīng	SV: be clear, be unmixed	L30
qīngzhēngyú	N: steamed fish (whole)	L30
qīngkè	VO: to give a party (Lit. to invite guests)	L30
qù	V: to send, to call	L29
quàn	V: to persuade	L27
rè	SV: be hot	L25
rènwù	N: mission, duty, assignment	L30
rēng	V: to throw, to toss, to cast	L29
ròu	N: meat	L30

Sānfānshì	N: San Francisco	L28
shāngwù	N: commercial or business affairs	L30
shǎngguāng	VO: to thank or ask someone for his/ her company	L30
shàngjiē	VO: to go into the street, to go downtown	L29
shàngyī	N: jacket	L30
shōushi	V: to put in order, to tidy, to repair	L27
shǒutíxiāng	N: suitcase	L25
shǒuxu	N: procedures	L27
shòu	SV: be thin, be lean (Opp. of <u>pàng</u>)	L30
shòupiàochù	N: ticket box office	L27
shūfáng	N: study room	L29
shūfu	SV: be comfortable, feel well	L25
shuāngrénfáng	N: room for two persons	L25
shuì	N: tax	L28
sitàojiān	N: a four-room suite	L25
sù	N: vegetable (Opp. of meat)	L30
sùshíjīn	N: assorted vegetables	L30
suān	SV: be sour	L30
suānlàtāng	N: hot and sour soup	L30
suànchūlai	RV: to figure out	L25
suànshang	RV: to include in, to count in	L25
suíshēn(dài)	PH: (carry) on one's person, (take) with one	L27
suóyǒude	N: all	L25
táng	N: sugar, candy	L26
tián	V: to fill in	L28
tiánbào	V: to fill in (a form)	L28
tíng	V: to stop	L27
tōng	V/RVE: to open, to pass through/to get through	L29
tōngdiànhuà	PH: to put through a phone call	L29
tóuděngzuò(r)	N: first-class seat	L27
tuì	N: to return, to give back	L25
tuōyùn	V: to consign for shipment, to check baggage	L27
tuō	V: to take off (clothes, shoes and socks)	L30
wàiguó	N: foreign country	L30
wàiguórén	N: foreigner	L30
wánr	V: to play, to have fun	L30
wànyī	CV: just in case, if by any chance	L27
wàng/wǎng	CV: towards	L26
wèn ... hǎo	IE: to inquire after someone's welfare	L30
wòchē	N: sleeping car, sleeper	L27

wòpǔ	N: sleeping berth	L27
wūzi	N: room	L25
xiàng	CV/BF: towards	L30
xiàng	AV/SV: resemble/be alike	L30
xiǎochīdiàn	N: snack bar, lunch room	L26
xiǎofèi	N: tip, gratuity	L25
xiǎomàibù	N: snack counter, refreshment room, variety shop	L26
xiǎoxīn	SV/V: be careful/to look out for	L29
xiǎozìtiáo(r)	N: a scrap of paper	L29
xiào	V: to smile, to laugh, to laugh at	L30
xīn	N: heart	L27
xīnfēng	N: envelope	L28
xìnr	N: message	L29
xìntǒng	N: mailbox	L28
xìnxīang	N: mailbox	L28
xìnzhi	N: letter paper	L28
xíngli	N: baggage (M: <u>jiàn</u>)	L25
xínglipiào	N: baggage ticket	L25
yáncháng	V: to lengthen, to extend, to prolong	L29
yāo	NU: one (used in place of <u>yi</u> in room number, telephone numbers)	L25
yàoburán	MA: otherwise	L27
yàobushi	MA: if not	L27
yěbù ... yěbù	A: neither ... nor	L30
yè	N: night	L25
yèlǐ	MA/N: night time, during the night	L25
yībù	NU/M: one step	L30
yīlù píngān	IE: have a pleasant journey	L27
yìtiān dào wǎn	PH: from morning till night, all day long	L30
yíyàng	A/SV: equally, similarly, be the same, be alike	L25
yìzhí	A: straight ahead, direct, continuously, all along, right up to now, always	L26, L27
Yìguo/Yìdàli	N: Italy	L26
yīngchǐ	M: an English foot	L29
yīnglǐ	M: mile (an English mile)	L26
yóuchāi	N: mailman (Taiwan)	L28
yóudīyuán	N: mailman (PRC)	L28
yóufèi	N: postage	L28
yóujiǎn	N: letter sheet (aerogram)	L28
yóupiào	N: stamp	L28
yóutǒng	N: pillar box, mailbox	L28
yóuwù	N: postal service	L28
yóuwùyuán	N: clerk in post office	L28

yóuxiāng	N: mailbox	L28
yóuzhèng	N: postal service	L28
yóuzhèng-xīnxiāng	N: post office box	L28
yǒuyì	N: friendship	L26
yǒu	CV/SV: be as much as/be as	L25
yòu ... yòu	A: both ... and	L27
Yǒngān	N: name of a street (Lit. lasting peace)	L26
yú	N: fish	L30
yùdìng	V: to subscribe, to book, to place an order	L27
yùxiān	A: in advance	L27
yùjiàn	V: to meet, to run into	L29
yuǎn	SV: be far	L26
yuǎnkè	N: a guest from afar	L30
yuánlái	MA: originally, as a matter of fact	L27
yuē	V: to make an appointment, to engage, to invite	L26
yuēhuì	N: appointment, engagement	L26
yùn	V: to transport	L27
yùnfèi	N: transportation, freight expenses	L27
yùنشū	V/N: to transport/transportation	L27
zánmen	N: we (including both the speaker and the person or persons spoken to)	L26
zhànxiàn	VO: the (telephone) line's busy	L29
zhǎo	V: to give change (in money)	L27
zhēng	V: to steam	L30
zhí	SV: be worth (so much), be valuable	L28
zhíqián	SV/VO: be valuable/ to be worth (so much)	L28
zhíhǎo	A: the best thing is to ..., the only thing to do is ...	L30
zhífēi	A: fly nonstop	L27
Zhōng Měi(zhōu)	N: Central America	L27
zhòng	SV: be heavy, be weighty	L27
zhǔyào	SV: be essential, be main, be principal	L30
zhǔyàode	A: essentially, mainly	L30
zhuǎnchē	VO: to transfer to another train or bus	L26
zǒngcái	N: chairman (of the board, of a political party)	L30
zǒnglǐngshì	N: consul general	L26
zuǒyòu	A: approximately, around, thereabout	L27
zuò	M: (for mountain, bridge, statue, etc.)	L27
zuòr	N: seat	L27
zuòwèi	N: seat	L27

INTRODUCTION

This workbook is designed to be used in conjunction with some of your homework tapes. It is intended to give you added practice, reinforcing and supplementing the lesson content of the textbook. It will also provide you with periodic and systematic reviews of the course material.

Below is the list of tapes you will receive for Module 4. The list indicates whether the tape is to be used with the textbook (T) or the workbook (W).

25AS1(T)	28AS1(T)
25AS2(W)	28AS2(W)
26AS1(T)	29AS1(T)
26AS2(W)	29AS2(W)
27AS1(T)	30AS1(T)
27AS2(W)	30AS2(W)

Note: The S stands for Side.

In addition to these tapes, each lesson has a "Listening Comprehension" (LC) tape and a "Lesson Test" tape, both to be played by the teacher in class. This workbook also contains the practice sheet for the listening comprehension tape. Make sure you take this sheet to class.

Tape 25A (S2)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Written Responses: Story. Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.

Segment 1: Question 1

1. What did people say about the Shen's hotel after they had stayed there?

1. _____

Segment 2: Questions 2 - 4

2. About how many rooms are there in the hotel?
3. How many are double rooms, and how many are single rooms?
4. What do you know about how each room is furnished?

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

Segment 3: Questions 5 - 6

5. Which direction is the building facing? How does that affect the rooms?
6. What can be said about the rooms in the rear?

5. _____

6. _____

Segment 4: Questions 7 - 8

7. Describe the scenery surrounding the hotel building. (What's in front and what's behind?)
8. Do Mr. Shen and Mrs. Shen have the same opinions about scenery?

7. _____

8. _____

Segment 5: Questions 9 - 10

- 9. When they had just started in the hotel business, what did Mr. and Mrs. Shen do? 9. _____
- 10. What is it that sometimes their hotel guests wanted to give them, but they did not accept? 10. _____

Segment 6: Questions 11 - 12

- 11. When they began their business, what did they do when some of the equipment broke down? 11. _____
- 12. How are their repair skills now? 12. _____

Segment 7: Question 13

- 13. What happens sometimes at night? Why? 13. _____

Segment 8: Questions 14 - 15

- 14. Now how is their hotel business? 14. _____
- 15. Do people make reservations in advance? Why? 15. _____

Segment 9: Questions 16-17

- 16. Why do people want to go to that city for a trip? 16. _____
- 17. What is it like at the two times mentioned? 17. _____

Segment 10: Questions 18 - 19

- 18. Why is Mrs. Shen afraid of cold weather? 18. _____

19. Why is Mr. Shen afraid
of hot weather?

19. _____

Segment 11: Questions 20 - 21

20. Now that their business
is busier than it used to
be, are Mr. and Mrs. Shen
busier in their work?

20. _____

21. How come?

21. _____

Segment 12: Questions 22 - 23

22. What are Mr. and Mrs. Shen
planning to do soon?

22. _____

23. Why did they choose to go
to that place?

23. _____

Tape 26A (S2)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Written Responses: Story. Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.

New Words:

duìmiàn
jànmiàn

A: opposite, face to face
V: to see, to meet

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

1. How many tables are there in the Liu's snack shop?
2. Describe a little about the arrangement of the tables.

1. _____
2. _____

Segment 2: Questions 3 - 4

3. How far is the snack shop from the beach?
4. Describe a little about its neighborhood. (What surrounds it?)

3. _____
4. _____

Segment 3: Questions 5 - 6

5. What is outside the entrance of the snack shop?

5. _____

6. Also on the left, there is a _____ where you can buy _____ and _____.

Segment 4: Question 7

7. What are some of the things people come to the snack shop for?

7. _____

Segment 5: Questions 8 - 9

8. What else attracts people to the shop?

8. _____

9. Once in the shop, what do they sometimes do?

9. _____

Segment 6: Questions 10 - 11

10. Where did the American want to go?

10. _____

11. What could he not find?

11. _____

Segment 7: Questions 12 - 13

12. Where did Mrs. Liu tell the student to go and wait?

12. _____

13. What did he say he would do instead of waiting?

13. _____

Segment 8: Questions 14 - 15

14. Why was he anxious to get somewhere?

14. _____

15. What did Mrs. Liu then suggest he do?

15. _____

Segment 9: Questions 16 - 17

16. How did he finally go?

16. _____

17. Why did he come back a few hours later?

17. _____

Segment 10: Questions 18 - 19

18. What did Paul learn from Mr. Liu?

18. _____

19. What did he give to Mr. Liu? Where did it come from?

19. _____

Segment 11: Questions 20 - 21

20. What did Mr. Liu say about the gift?

20. _____

21. What did Paul say to that?

21. _____

Segment 12: Question 22

22. Why did some people come to the snack shop instead of buying things from a vending machine?

22. _____

Tape 27A (S2)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Written Responses: Story. Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.

New Words:

zhèngmén dàitīng
shìwùyuán
xiǎoxīn
Tàipínyáng

N: hall by the front door
N: office clerk
SV: be careful
N: Pacific Ocean

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

1. How did Mr. and Mrs. Shen plan their trip originally? (Be specific.)
2. What kind of tickets did they book before they left?

1. _____
2. _____

Segment 2: Questions 3 - 5

3. Why did they change their original plan?
4. What change did they make to their original plan?
5. What kind of tickets did the travel agency get for the Shens?

3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Segment 3: Questions 6 - 7

6. Was Mrs. Shen satisfied with the tickets? Why?
7. What did the ticket clerk tell her?

6. _____
7. _____

Segment 4: Questions 8 - 9

8. When the ticket clerk made seat reservations for them, what kind of seats could he manage to get? Where were they located?

8. _____

9. Were the seats together?
By windows?

9. _____

Segment 5: Questions 10 - 11

10. What did the Shens lose?

10. _____

11. After they found out that
they had lost something im-
portant, what did they do?

11. _____

Segment 6: Question 12

12. The hotel clerk told them
how to get to the Chinese
consulate. Repeat the
directions he gave.

12. _____

Segment 7: Questions 13 - 14

13. Did the Shens walk to the
consulate? Why not?

13. _____

14. Whom did the Shens see
first at the consulate?
And what did they tell him?

14. _____

Segment 8: Question 15

15. What did the consul tell
the Shens? (Be specific.)

15. _____

Segment 9: Questions 16 - 17

16. How did the passports get
to the consulate?

16. _____

17. What two things did the
consul say to the Shens?

17. _____

Segment 10: Questions 18 - 19

18. What did the luggage clerk
ask the Shens after they
checked in their luggage?
Why?

18. _____

19. What did Mr. Shen tell the clerk?

19. _____

Segment 11: Questions 20 - 21

20. While they were in the airport waiting room, what could they see through the window?

20. _____

21. Why didn't Mrs. Shen want to go for a walk with her husband?

21. _____

Segment 12: Questions 22 - 24

22. Where did Mrs. Shen sit in the airplane? How did she get that seat?

22. _____

23. What did Mrs. Shen like most on this trip?

23. _____

24. What did Mr. Shen like most on this trip?

24. _____

Tape 28A (S2)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Written Responses: Story. Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.

New Words:

júzhǒng
shouxīnrén
zhuǎnxìn
dàxiǎo
fēnkāi

N: postmaster
N: addressee
N: forwarding address
N: size
V: to separate

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 3

1. What is Mrs. Zhu's present job? Since when?
2. How long has she been working in the same office?
3. What different positions has she held there in the past?

1. _____

2. _____
3. _____

Segment 2: Questions 4 - 5

4. What different names are there for a mailman/mail person in the Chinese language?
5. What was the first job she ever held? Was she married then?

4. _____
5. _____

Segment 3: Questions 6 - 7

6. How did she do her first job?
7. What kind of problems did she have on her first job?

6. _____
7. _____

Segment 4: Questions 8 - 9

8. How is registered mail delivered?

8. _____

9. What if the individual
is not at home?

9. _____

Segment 5: Questions 10 - 11

10. What problems might parcel
post present?

10. _____

11. What should be done if the
individual is not at home?

11. _____

Segment 6: Questions 12 - 13

12. What did she do if the add-
resses on the envelopes
were not clear or were
written incorrectly?

12. _____

13. In regard to one's mail,
what should one do when one
moves to another address?

13. _____

Segment 7: Questions 14 - 15

14. In Fang Meiying's town,
are there many people rent-
ing post office boxes?

14. _____

15. On her mail route, what did
Fang Meiying notice? (2)

15. _____

Segment 8: Questions 16 - 17

16. In her opinion, whose mail-
box is the best on her
route?

16. _____

17. Why is that mailbox the
best? (2)

17. _____

Segment 9: Question 18

18. Besides delivering mail,
what other work did she
do as a mailperson? (3)

18. _____

Segment 10: Questions 19 - 20

19. What was the problem she encountered with this registered airmail letter?

19. _____

20. What did Fang Meiying do with this letter? Why?

20. _____

Segment 11: Questions 21 - 22

21. What did she find out when she checked the new address?

21. _____

22. Why did the addressee move again? (Be specific.)

22. _____

Segment 12: Questions 23 - 24

23. Was the letter important? What was it?

23. _____

24. What did the addressee say when he got the letter?

24. _____

Tape 29A (S2)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Written Responses: Story. Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.

New Words:

bùguǎn

lìngwài
zhuànqiánA: regardless of, no matter
what

A-SP: besides, in addition/other

VO: to make a profit

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

1. To make a phone call in a public telephone booth, how much is the increase in charges right now?
2. What type of a problem did the story teller say it was?

1. _____

2. _____

Segment 2: Question 3

3. The monthly service charge was _____; no matter how many _____ calls you make, _____ calls are figured additionally.

Segment 3: Questions 4 - 5

4. What are the telephone service charges in the United States compared to other nations?
5. Where can one find a telephone directory?

4. _____

5. _____

Segment 4: Questions 6 - 7

6. Under what condition can the coins be returned?

6. _____

7. List the four types of operator-assisted services given in the story.

7. _____

Segment 5: Questions 8 - 9

8. According to the story, one seldom meets a telephone operator who is _____ and who will _____.

9. List three qualities that a telephone operator possesses.

9. _____

Segment 6: Questions 10 - 11

10. What's the first thing that a telephone operator cannot say to you?

10. _____

11. What's the second thing that a telephone operator cannot say to you?

11. _____

Segment 7: Questions 12 - 13

12. Where's the most likely place one can find a telephone extension in a big house?

12. _____

13. What about in a small house?

13. _____

Segment 8: Questions 14 - 15

14. What must a person sign for before he/she starts working in a telephone company?

14. _____

15. In order to make a lot of profit, it would be better for a telephone company to have a _____.

Segment 9: Questions 16 - 17

16. Who cannot explain clearly the work of an engineer?

16. _____

17. What would happen if telephone operators were no longer available?

17. _____

Segment 10: Questions 18 - 19

18. From how far away can one make a telephone call? How close?

18. _____

19. What would happen if the phones didn't work?

19. _____

Tape 30A (S2)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Written Responses: Story. Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.

New Words:

chī sù
zhǔ rén
tiān
qí shí
shǎo bù liǎo
húitóu yí kàn
fēnbié
jiéhūn
jīzhàng
gōngchéngjǔ
xùnliàn
wénxué

VO: to be a vegetarian
N: host
V: to add, to increase
A: actually
RV: can't avoid
PH: take a look behind him
V: to part, to leave each other
V: to marry
V: to keep accounts
N: engineer office
V: to train
N: literature

Segment 1: Question 1

1. That evening when Dawson had dinner with several Chinese friends of his, what dishes did they order?

1. _____

Segment 2: Question 2 - 4

2. What did Dawson eat at the dinner? Why?
3. Why hadn't Dawson told his host about his eating habits?
4. Why did Dawson leave the party earlier than the others?

2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

Segment 3: Questions 5 - 6

5. Do you think it is convenient for Dawson to go to many dinner parties? Why?
6. Once he has eaten meat, how does he feel?

5. _____

6. _____

Segment 4: Question 7

7. After he stepped out of the restaurant, what did Dawson hear? Whom did he see?

7. _____

Segment 5: Question 8

8. Who was that old man? How long had they not seen each other?

8. _____

Segment 6: Questions 9 - 10

9. What did Mr. Ma say to Dawson?

9. _____

10. What did Dawson say to Mr. Ma? Then what did they decide to do? Why?

10. _____

Segment 7: Questions 11 - 13

11. How big an age gap was there between Dawson and Ma?

11. _____

12. When did they come to know each other? And how?

12. _____

13. What did Mrs. Ma do in America?

13. _____

Segment 8: Questions 14 - 15

14. Why did Dawson and his wife like to go to the Ma's house when they were neighbors?

14. _____

15. Once, after Dawson got sick, what difficulty did they face?

15. _____

Segment 9: Questions 16 - 17

16. When the Mas learned about the Dawsons' difficulty, did they help the younger couple? How?

16. _____

17. After that incident, how did Mrs. Dawson solve their financial problem?

17. _____

Segment 10: Question 18

18. When Dawson and Ma were walking to the hotel to see Mrs. Dawson, what did Dawson ask?

18. _____

Segment 11: Question 19

19. Where does Ma live now? What is his son doing?

19. _____

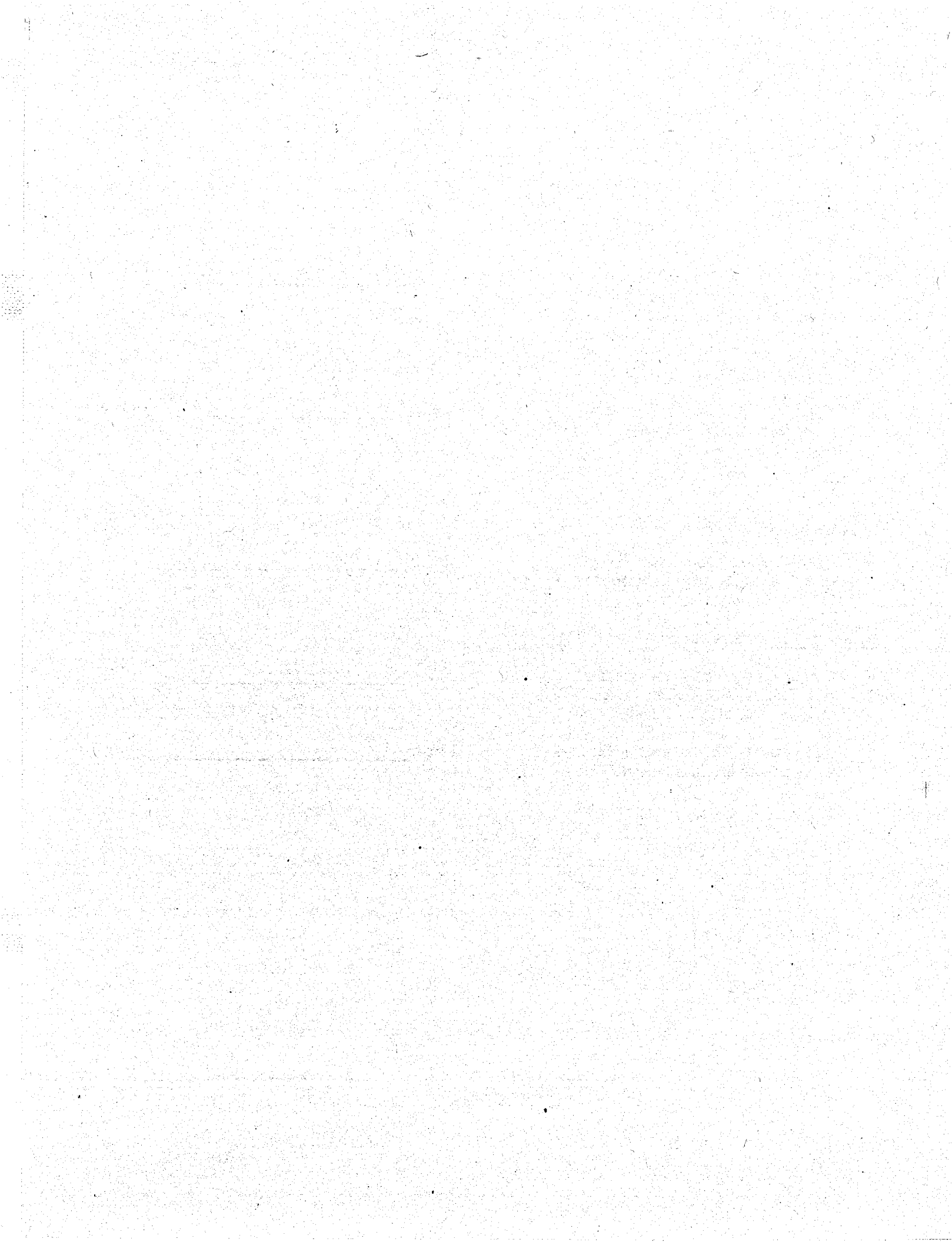
Segment 12: Questions 20 - 21

20. Why did Ma say he could not go to America with Dawson at that time?

20. _____

21. What were Ma's main duties at his work in China?

21. _____



Tape 25LC(S1)

Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

New Word:

Suànle!

IE: Forget it! Let it pass!

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

1. After making the decision to take a trip to the United States, what did Mr. and Mrs. Shen do first? Why?

1. _____

2. Who is Tang Dazhong? What did he do for the Shens?

2. _____

Segment 2: Questions 3 - 4

3. What did Tang Dazhong tell the Shens about the trip by airplane and by ship? (3)

3. _____

4. What did he think about this plan?

4. _____

Segment 3: Questions 5 - 6

5. What are the different time schedules for flights to the United States? (2)

5. _____

6. What time schedule did Mrs. Shen prefer?

6. _____

Segment 4: Questions 7 - 8

7. What places in particular did Mr. Shen want to compare? (2)

7. _____

8. What other place did he want to see?

8. _____

Segment 5: Questions 9 - 11

- 9. What could the travel agency help the Shens do in preparing their trip? 9. _____
- 10. What would the Shens have to do themselves? 10. _____
- 11. About how long would it take to get a passport? 11. _____

Segment 6: Questions 12 - 13

- 12. When they went to apply for passports, what did they have to do first? 12. _____
- 13. The day they went there, were there other people there? How many? 13. _____

Segment 7: Questions 14 - 16

- 14. What did Mrs. Shen buy yesterday? How many? 14. _____

- 15. What did Mr. Shen say when he saw his wife's purchases? 15. _____
- 16. What was Mrs. Shen's answer to her husband's question? 16. _____

Segment 8: Questions 17 - 18

- 17. What two reasons did Mr. Shen have for not needing new ones? (2) 17. _____

- 18. What did Mrs. Shen say to him? (Be specific.) 18. _____

Segment 9: Questions 19 - 20

- 19. What else did Mrs. Shen buy? 19. _____
- 20. For whom? 20. _____

Segment 10: Questions 21 - 22

21. What did Mr. Shen think
but not say out loud? 21. _____
22. What did he ask his wife? 22. _____

Segment 11: Questions 23 - 24

23. Why did Mr. Shen's question
make his wife unhappy? 23. _____
24. How did she respond? 24. _____

Segment 12: Questions 25 - 26

25. By the end how did Mr.
Shen feel? 25. _____
26. Did he tell his wife what
he was thinking? Why? 26. _____

Tape 26LC(S1)

Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)New Words:

méi chuguo shì
lùxiàn

PH: to have had no accident
N: route

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 3

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1. Formerly what did people think about the job of driving a bus? | 1. _____ |
| 2. What do people think about it now? | 2. _____ |
| 3. So far how long has Mrs. Qian been in her present job? | 3. _____ |

Segment 2: Questions 4 - 6

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 4. What does she pay attention to when she is driving? | 4. _____ |
| 5. What does she do when she approaches an intersection? | 5. _____ |
| 6. What does she do when she wants to make a right turn or left turn? | 6. _____ |

Segment 3: Questions 7 - 8

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 7. What other jobs did she have in the past? | 7. _____ |
| 8. How did her past jobs help her in her present job? | 8. _____ |

Segment 4: Question 9

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| 9. What kind of questions do people ask her on the bus? (2 examples) | 9. _____
_____ |
|--|-------------------|

Segment 5: Question 10

10. What questions other than the above do people ask her on her bus?

10. _____

Segment 6: Questions 11 - 12

11. Does she answer the questions? Why?

11. _____

12. Does she feel tired at the end of her shift?

12. _____

Segment 7: Question 13

13. Describe a little about the route she drives.

13. _____

Segment 8: Question 14

14. Name a few known buildings she passes on the bus route.
(3)

14. _____

Segment 9: Questions 15 - 17

15. Where does she live?

15. _____

16. How does she get to work?

16. _____

17. What are her working hours?

17. _____

Segment 10: Questions 18 - 19

18. How many members are there in her family?

18. _____

19. Where do they work?

19. _____

Segment 11: Question 20

20. What did she do when she heard there was a sick old man on her bus?

20. _____

Segment 12: Question 21

21. How did her family know
about the incident before
she got home?

21. _____

Tape 27LC(S1)

Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

New Words:

kèchē
bóshī
jiàoyùbù

N: passenger train
N: Doctor, Ph.D.
N: ministry of education

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

1. Who is Mr. Fang Youxin?
(What is his age, his job,
etc.)
2. Can you tell something
about the railroad station
of Zhengxian?

1. _____

2. _____

Segment 2: Questions 3 - 4

3. What kind of seating
arrangements are there in
the waiting room?
4. What can one find on the
west side of the hall,
close to the windows?

3. _____
4. _____

Segment 3: Questions 5 - 7

5. Where is the ticket office?
6. Where do passengers check
in their luggage?
7. Do passengers have to wait
for a long time to check
in their luggage? Why?

5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

Segment 4: Questions 8 - 9

8. Mr. Fang is an experienced _____ clerk.

9. What does he think (to himself) when he sees someone approaching the ticket counter?

9. _____

Segment 5: Questions 10 - 11

10. What kind of new passengers are there every year in July and August? (Be specific.)

10. _____

11. He describes them as both _____ and _____.

Segment 6: Questions 12 - 13

12. At first they came back once or twice a year; then after a few years, they _____.

13. What two things do they have the opportunity to do in the city? (2)

13. _____

Segment 7: Questions 14 - 15

14. Last July on a _____, the number _____ passenger train from the _____ entered the Zhengxian Railroad Station and stopped at the number _____ platform.

15. Who came from among the disembarking passengers and approached the ticket stand?

15. _____

Segment 8: Questions 16 - 17

16. When he walked up to the ticket office, what did Mr. Fang think?

16. _____

17. What did that passenger say to Mr. Fang?

17. _____

Segment 9: Questions 18 - 19

- 18. When they first met, what problem did he have, and how did Mr. Fang help him?
- 19. Why did he think Mr. Fang was important to him?

18. _____

19. _____

Segment 10: Questions 20 - 21

- 20. Why couldn't Mr. Fang recognize that passenger earlier? (2)
- 21. How had Mr. Fang heard from him in past years?

20. _____

21. _____

Segment 11: Questions 22 - 23

- 22. Why hadn't Liu Daming come back to Zhengxian in past years?
- 23. How long would he stay for this trip?

22. _____

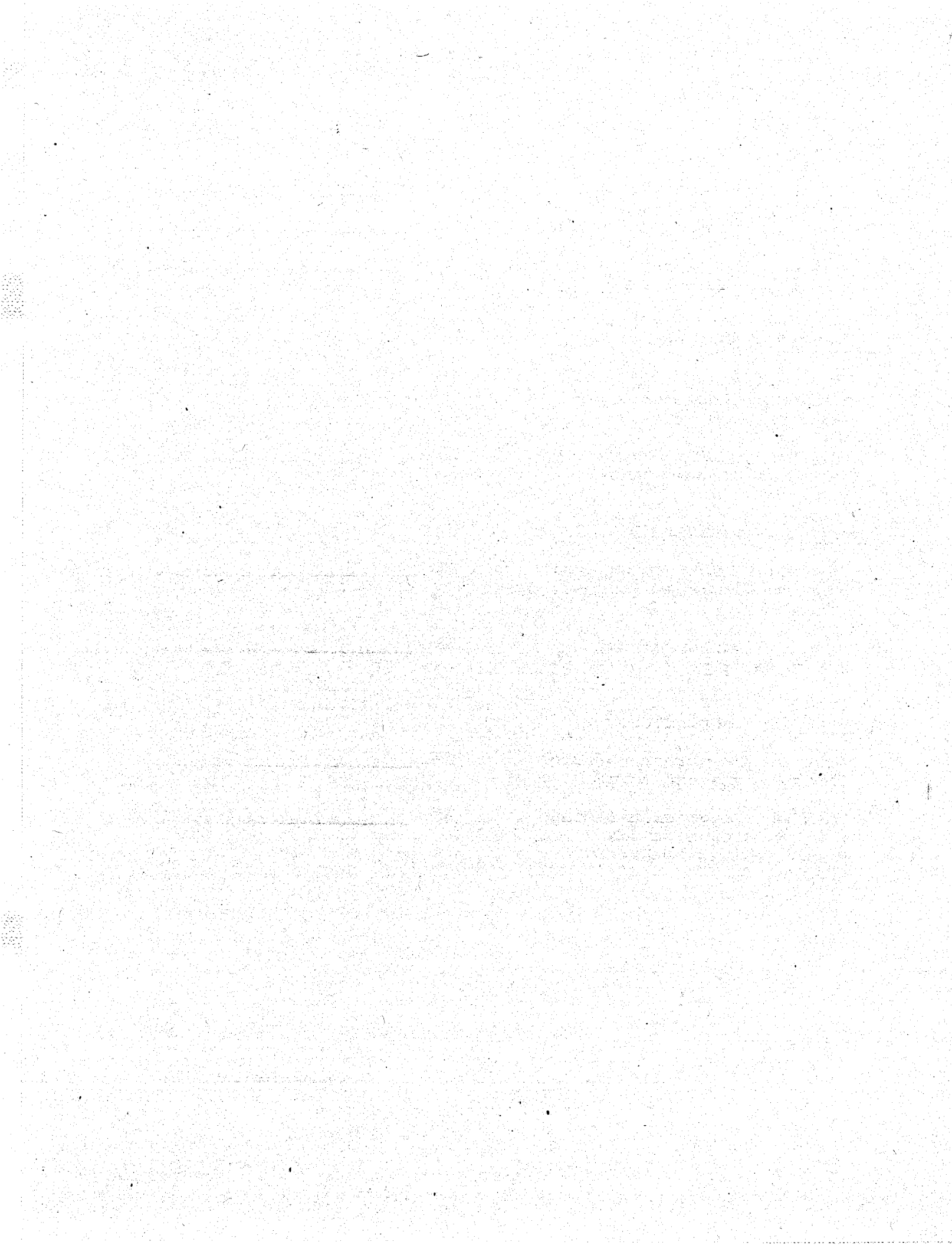
23. _____

Segment 12: Questions 24 - 25

- 24. What is the purpose of Liu Daming's present trip?
- 25. When Mr. Fang asked Daming to have dinner at his house, what did Daming say?

24. _____

25. _____



Tape 28LC(S1)

Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

New Words:

kǎoshang

shiyishi

dàrén

jībúzhù

V: to be tested and become qualified

V: to give it a try

N: adults

RV: not able to remember/hold in mind

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

1. When Fang Meiying started to work in the post office, how did she carry on her studying? For how long?
2. How did she get the job as a clerk in the post office?

1. _____

2. _____

Segment 2: Questions 3 - 5

3. What were her duties as a clerk in the post office?
4. What new machine did they get that year?
5. Name some of its functions.

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

Segment 3: Questions 6 - 7

6. Was the new machine accepted in the town? Who seemed to like it best?
7. What kind of trouble did the machine have?

6. _____

7. _____

Segment 4: Questions 8 - 9

8. What are the busiest months for a post office?

8. _____

9. As a clerk, what did Fang Meiying do during the busy months? (At least three things)

9. _____

Segment 5: Question 10

10. What are some of the common mistakes people make when they send parcels? (3)

10. _____

Segment 6: Questions 11 - 12

11. What is the question asked about parcel post?

11. _____

12. What kind of paper is better for wrapping a parcel?

12. _____

Segment 7: Questions 13 - 15

13. How was Mrs. Wang described?

13. _____

14. What was wrong with the parcel?

14. _____

15. What did Mrs. Wang say?

15. _____

Segment 8: Questions 16 - 17

16. What did Fang Meiying tell her?

16. _____

17. What did she find in the large parcel? (3)

17. _____

Segment 9: Questions 18 - 19

18. Was there anything valuable in the parcel?

18. _____

19. Why did the sender want to send the vase to her daughter?

19. _____

Segment 10: Questions 20 - 21

20. What did Mrs. Wang tell Fang Meiying about herself?

20. _____

21. What was Meiying doing during this time?

21. _____

Segment 11: Questions 22 - 23

22. Who filled out the insurance form for the parcel? For which item?

22. _____

23. After they finished with the parcel, what did Fang write down?

23. _____

Segment 12: Questions 24 - 25

24. Afterwards did Fang contact old Mrs. Wang? How often?

24. _____

25. What did Mrs. Wang's daughter say in her letter to Fang Meiying?

25. _____

Tape 29LC(S1)

Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

New Words:

jiāohuò
tóngshí

VO: to deliver
A: at the same time

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

1. Where did Wang Wen come from (name the province and county)?
2. Where did Wang Wen and his family reside?

1. _____
2. _____

Segment 2: Questions 3 - 4

3. Give two reasons that show why he often goes to the city.
4. What did he do with most of the money he collected?

3. _____
4. _____

Segment 3: Questions 5 - 6

5. What was he afraid of in 1948?
6. What did he do before he left for Hong Kong?

5. _____
6. _____

Segment 4: Questions 7 - 8

7. What did he do when he arrived at the hotel?
8. Describe the size of his room in the hotel.

7. _____
8. _____

Segment 5: Questions 9 - 10

9. Whom did he try to reach?

9. _____

10. How long did it take for the phone call to get through?

10. _____

Segment 6: Questions 11 - 12

11. What was Mr. Li's reaction?

11. _____

12. How did Mr. Li get to the hotel?

12. _____

Segment 7: Questions 13 - 14

13. Why did Mr. Li blame Mr. Wang for not writing him earlier?

13. _____

14. What was Wang's plan?

14. _____

Segment 8: Questions 15 - 16

15. How was Mr. Li's company organized?

15. _____

16. List the items that must be on the contract.

16. _____

Segment 9: Questions 17 - 18

17. The usual 9-to-5 working hours may be extended to _____.

18. Describe the street scene in Hong Kong.

18. _____

Segment 10: Questions 19 - 20

19. Where did they go to have dinner that evening?

19. _____

20. From where did Mr. Li call his wife?

20. _____

Tape 30LC(S1)

Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

New Words:

qīngzhù
qúshí
jiǎngjiù
tianqì

V/N: to celebrate/celebration
A: in fact, as a matter of fact
SV/V: be particular about/to
strive for, to stress
N: weather

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

1. According to the story, the Chinese people seem to be (even more) knowledgeable about liking to _____.
2. State the four reasons or occasions that people choose to go out to eat.

2. _____

Segment 2: Questions 3 - 4

3. What are the advantages of eating (having a single meal) at home?
4. Give two reasons that show why people choose to go to a restaurant when they are entertaining (many) guests.

3. _____

 4. _____

Segment 3: Questions 5 - 6

5. What must one know how to do if one wants to eat some special food/dishes?
6. Why do business people often go to a restaurant to eat?

5. _____

 6. _____

Segment 4: Questions 7 - 8

7. What kind of ingredients do we use when we sauté a beef dish?

7. _____

8. Name the two common dishes that we usually serve when we have guests for dinner.

8. _____

Segment 5: Questions 9 - 10

9. These dishes are not only good to eat, but there are also many _____ to _____ them.

10. If you eat them, you will not get _____.

Segment 6: Questions 11 - 12

11. What does the Chinese family like to have at a meal?

11. _____

12. What kind of soup is favored by a Chinese (family)?

12. _____

Segment 7: Questions 13 - 14

13. State the best thing to drink and tell under/ during what condition?

13. _____

14. Foreigners and children do not like it _____.

Segment 8: Questions 15 - 16

15. Since some of you are so knowledgeable about Chinese food and Chinese culture, when you are in a Chinese restaurant you know how to _____ and _____.

16. Then can you be called _____?